





THE  
H O L Y W A R,  
MADE BY  
SHADDAI upon DIABOLUS,  
For the Regaining of the  
METROPOLIS of the WORLD:  
OR, THE  
Losing and Taking again  
OF THE  
Town of Mansoul.

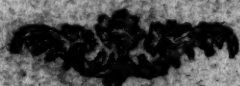
---

By JOHN BUNYAN, the Author  
of the Pilgrim's Progress.

---

*I have used Similitudes,*      Hosea 12. 10.

---



---

L O N D O N:  
Printed for J. WREN and W. HODGES.

---

MDCCLXXXV.





AN  
EPISTLE  
TO THE  
READER.

'T IS strange to me, that they that love to tell  
Things done of old, yea, and that do excel  
Their equals in historiology,  
Speak not of Mansoul's wars, but let them lie  
Dead, like old fables, or such worthless things,  
That to the reader no advantage brings :  
When men, let them make what they will their own,  
Till they know this, are to themselves unknown.

Of stories I well know there's divers sorts,  
Some foreign, some domestic; and reports  
Are therefore made as fancy leads the writers ;  
(By books a man may guess at the inditers.)

Some will again of that which never was,  
Nor will be, feign, (and that without a cause)  
Such matter, raise such mountains, tell such things  
Of men, of laws, of countries, and of kings :  
And in their story seem to be so sage ;  
And with such gravity cloath ev'ry page,  
That though their frontispiece says all is vain,  
Yet to their way disciples they obtain.

But,



## TO THE READER.

*True  
Christi-  
ans.*

*The scrip-  
tures.*

But, readers, I have somewhat else to do,  
Than with vain stories thus to trouble you ;  
What here I say, some men do know so well,  
They can with tears and joy the story tell.

The town of Mansoul is well known to many,  
Nor are her troubles doubted of by any  
That are acquainted with those histories  
That Mansoul, and her wars anatomize.

Then lend thy ear to what I do relate  
Touching the town of Mansoul and her state,  
How she was lost, took captive, made a slave ;  
And how against him set, that should her save.  
Yea, how by hostile ways, she did oppose  
Her Lord, and with his enemy did close.  
For they are true, he that will them deny,  
Must needs the best of records vilify.  
For my part I (myself) was in the town,  
Both when 'twas set up, and when pulling  
down,

I saw Diabolus in his possession,  
And Mansoul also under his oppression.  
Yea, I was there when she owned him for  
Lord,

And to him did submit with one accord.

When Mansoul trampled upon things di-  
vine,

*His Coun-  
sels.*

And was wallowed in filth as doth a swine ;  
When she betook herself unto her arms,  
Fought her Emanuel, despis'd his charms,  
Then I was there, and did rejoice to see  
Diabolus and Mansoul so agree.

Let no men then count me a fable-maker,  
Nor make my name or credit a partaker  
Of their derision : what is here in view,  
Of mine own knowledge, I dare say is true,  
I saw the Prince's armed men come down  
By troops, by thousands, to besiege the town.  
I saw the captains, heard the trumpets sound,  
And how his forces covered all the ground.  
Yea, how they set themselves in battle-ray,  
I shall remember to my dying day.

I saw the colours waving in the wind,  
And they within to mischief how combin'd,

# TO THE READER.

vii

To ruin Mansoul, and to make away  
Her *primum mobile* without delay.  
I saw the mounts cast up against the town,  
And how the slings were plac'd to beat it  
down.

*Her Soul.*

I heard the stones fly whizzing by mine ears,  
(What longer kept in mind than got in fears?)  
I heard them fall, and saw what work they made,  
And how old *Mors* did cover with his shade  
The face of Mansoul; and I heard her cry,  
Wo worth the day in dying I shall die.

*Death.*

I saw the batt'ring rams, and how they play'd  
To beat ope Ear-gate, and I was afraid,  
Not only Ear-gate, but the very town  
Would by those batt'ring rams be beaten down.

I saw the fights, and heard the captains  
shout,

And in each battle saw who fac'd about  
I saw who wounded were, and who were slain;  
And who when dead, would come to life again.

*Lusts.*

I heard the cries of those that wounded were,  
(While others fought like men bereft of fear)  
And while the cry, kill, kill, was in mine ears,  
The gutters ran, not so with blood as tears,

Indeed the captains did not always fight,  
But then they would molest us day and night;  
Their cry, up, fall on, let us take the town,  
Kept us from sleeping, or from lying down.

I was there when the gates were broken  
ope,

And saw how Mansoul then was stript of hope.  
I saw the captains march into the town,  
How there they fought, and did their foes  
cut down.

I heard the prince bid Boanerges go  
Up to the castle and there seize his foe,  
And saw him and his fellows bring him down  
In chains of great contempt quite through the  
town.

I saw Emanuel when he possess'd  
His town of Mansoul, and how greatly blest,

*A town,*

A town, his gallant town of Mansoul was,  
 When she receiv'd his pardon, liv'd his laws.  
 When the Diabolians were caught,  
 When try'd and when to execution brought,  
 Then I was there; yea, I was standing by,  
 When Mansoul did the rebels crucify:  
 I also saw Mansoul clad all in white,  
 And heard her prince call her his heart's delight.  
 I saw him put upon her chains of gold,  
 And rings and bracelets, goodly to behold.  
 What shall I say? I heard the people's cries,  
 And saw the prince wipe tears from Mansoul's eyes.  
 I heard the groans, and saw the joy of many;  
 Tell you of all, I neither will, nor can I.  
 But by what here I say, you well may see,  
 That Mansoul's matchless wars no fables be.  
 Mansoul! the desire of both princes was,  
 One keep his gain would, t'other gain his loss;  
 Diabolus would cry the town is mine,  
 Emanuel would plead a right divine  
 Unto his Mansoul; then to blows they go,  
 And Mansoul cries, these wars will me undo.

Mansoul! her wars seem'd endless in her eyes,  
 She's lost by one, becomes another's prize.  
 And he again that lost her last would swear,  
 Have her I will, or her in pieces tear.

Mansoul it was the very seat of war,  
 Wherefore her troubles greater were by far,  
 Than only where the noise of war is heard,  
 Or where the shaking of a sword is fear'd,  
 Or only where small skirmishes are fought,  
 Or where the fancy fighteth with a thought.

She saw the swords of fighting men made red,  
 And heard the cries of those with them wounded;  
 Must not her frights then be much more by far  
 Than theirs that to such doings strangers are?  
 Or theirs that hear the beating of a drum,  
 But not made fly for fear from house and home?

Mansoul not only heard the trumpets sound,  
 But saw her gallants gasping on the ground.  
 Wherefore we must not think that she could rest  
 With them, whose greatest earnest is but jest;



Or where the blust'ring threatning of great wars  
Do end in parleys, or in wording jars.

Manfoul, her mighty wars, they did protend  
Her well or wo, and that world without end.  
Wherefore she must be more concern'd than they  
Whose fears begin, and end the self same day.  
Or where none other harm doth come to him  
That is engag'd, but loss of life or limb,  
As all must needs confess that now to dwell  
In universe, and can this story tell.

Count me not then with them that to amaze  
The people set them on the stars to gaze,  
Insinuating with much confidence,  
That each of them is now the residence  
Of some brave creatures; yea, a world they  
will

Have in each star, though it be past their skill  
To make it manifest to any man,  
That reason hath, or tell his fingers can.

But I have too long held thee in the porch,  
And kept thee from the sun-shine with a torch.  
Well, now go forward, step within the door,  
And there behold five hundred times much more  
Of all sorts of such inward rarities  
As please the mind will, and will feed the eyes  
With those, which if a christian, thou wilt see  
Not small, but things of greatest moment be.  
Nor do thou go to work without my key,  
(In mysteries men soon do loose their way)  
And also turn it right if thou would'st know  
My riddle, and would'st with my heifer plow,  
It lies there in the window, fare thee well,  
My next may be to ring thy passing bell.

*The Mar-  
gin.*

JOHN BUNYAN.

A R E.

1911

1871-1900

*[Faint handwritten text at the bottom of the page]*

1912

General Summary of the Investigation

100

2011年12月11日



1910

\_\_\_\_\_

SECRET 001-101 0001-115-000



41 DE 80

31 DE 60

1940



100

71



11



1940

— 6 —



Y YV H S Y H O I

100



1



---

A  
R E L A T I O N  
P O F T H E  
H O L Y W A R, &c.

**I**N my travels, as I walked through many regions and countries, it was my chance to happen into that famous continent of Universe; a very large and spacious country it is. It lieth between two poles, and just amidst the four points of the heavens. It is a place well watered, and richly adorned with hills and valleys, bravely situate; and for the most part (at least where I was) very fruitful, also well peopled, and a very sweet air.

The people are not all of one complexion, nor yet of one language, mode, or way of religion; but differ as much as 'tis said) do the planets themselves. Some are right, and some are wrong, even as it happeneth to be in lesser regions.

In this country, as I said; it was my lot to travel, and there travel I did, and that so long, even till I learned much of their mother-tongue, together with the customs, and manners of them among whom I was.

And to speak truth, I was much delighted to *A natural* see, and hear many things which I saw and *state plea-* heard among them: yea, I had (to be sure) *sing to the* even lived and died a native among them, (so *flesh* was I taken with them and their doings) had not my Master sent for me home to his house, *Christ* there to do business for him, and to oversee business done.



Now there is in this gallant country of *Uni-Man.* verfe, a fair and delicate town, a corporation, called Mansoul: a town for its building so curious, for its situation so commodious, for its privileges so advantageous; (I mean with reference to its original) that I may say of it, as was said before, of the continent in which it is placed, 'There is not its equal under the whole heaven.'

As to the situation of this town, it lieth just between the two worlds, and the first founder, and *Scriptures.* builder of it, so far as be the best, and most authentic records I can gather, was one *The Al-* Shaddai; and he built it for his own delight. *mighty.* He made it the mirror, and glory of all that he made, even the top piece beyond any thing else that he did in that country: Gen. i. 26. yea, so goodly a town was Mansoul, when first built, that it is said by some, the god's at the setting up thereof, came down to see it, and sang for *Created* joy. And as he made it goodly to behold, *Angels.* so also mighty to have dominion, over all the country round about. Yea, all was commanded to acknowledge Mansoul for their metropolitan, all was in-joined to do homage to it. Yea, the town itself had positive commission, and power from her king to demand service of all, and also to subdue any, that any ways denied to do it.

There was reared up in the midst of this town, a most famous and stately palace; for strength, it *The heart.* might be called a castle; for pleasantness, a paradise, for largeness, a place so copious as to contain all the world. Eccl. iii. 11. This place, the king Shaddai intended but for himself alone, and not another with him: partly because of his own delights, and partly because he would not that the terror of strangers should be upon the town. This place *The powers* Shaddai, made also a garrison of, but com- *of the soul.* mitted the keeping of it, only to the men of the town.

The wall of the town was well built, yea, so fast and *The body.* firm was it knit and compact together, that had it been for the townsmen themselves, they

they could not have been shaken, or broken for ever.

For here lay the excellent wisdom of him that builded Mansoul, that the walls could never be broken down, nor hurt, by the most mighty adverse potentate, unless the townsmen gave consent thereto.

This famous town of Mansoul had five gates, in at which to come, out at which to go, and these were made likewise answerable to the walls: to wit, impregnable, and such as could never be opened nor forced, but by the will and leave of those within. *The five* The names of the gates were these, Ear-gate, *Senses*, Eye-gate, Mouth-gate, Nose-gate, and Feel-gate.

Other things there were that belonged to the town of Mansoul, which if you adjoin to these, will yet give farther demonstration to all, of the glory and strength of the place. It had always a sufficiency of provision within its walls; it had the *of Man-* best, most wholesome, and excellent law that *soul at* then was extant in the world. There was not *first* a rascal, rogue, or traiterous person then within its walls: they were all true men, and fast joined together: and this you know is a great matter. And to all these, it was always (so long as it had the goodness to keep true to Shaddai, the king) his countenance, his protection, and it was his delight, &c.

Well, upon a time there was one Diabolus, a mighty giant, made an assault upon this famous town of Mansoul, to take it, and make it his own habitation. This giant was king of *Sinners* the Blacks or Negroes, and a most raving *the fallen* prince he was. We will, if you please, first *angels* discourse of the original of this Diabolus, and then of his taking of this famous town of Mansoul.

This Diabolus is indeed a great and mighty prince, and yet both poor and beggarly. As to *The ori-* his original, he was at first, one of the servants *ginal of* of king Shaddai, made, and taken, and put by *Diabo-* him into a most high and mighty place, yea, *lus* was put into such principalities as belonged to the best of his territories and dominions. This Diabolus was made son of the morning, Isa. xiv. 12. and a  
B brave

brave place he had of it: It brought him much glory, and gave him much brightness, and income that might have contented his Luciferian heart, had it not been insatiable, and enlarged as hell itself.

Well, he seeing himself thus exalted to greatness and honour, and raging in his mind for higher state, and degree, what doth he but begin to think with himself, how he might be set up as lord over all, and have the sole power under Shaddai, 2 Pet. ii. 4. Jude 6. (now that did the king reserve for his Son, yea, and had already bestowed it upon him) wherefore he first consults with himself what had best to be done, and then breaks his mind to some other of his companions, to the which they also agreed. So in fine, they came to this issue, that they should make an attempt upon the king's Son to destroy him, that the inheritance might be theirs.

Well, to be short, the treason (as I said) was concluded, the time appointed, the word given, the rebels rendezvoured, and the assault attempted. Now the king, and his Son being all, and always eye, could not but discern all passages in his dominions; and he having always love for his Son, as for himself, could not, at what he saw, but be greatly provoked and offended: wherefore, what does he, but takes him in the very nick, and first trip that they made towards their design, convicts them of the treason, horrid rebellion, and conspiracy that they had devised, and now attempted to put into practise: and casts them altogether out of all place of trust, benefit, honour, and preferment; this done, he banishes them from the court, turns them down into the horrible pits, as fast bound in chains, never more to expect the least favour from his hands, but to abide the judgment that he hath appointed: and that for ever, and yet,

Now they being thus cast out of all place of trust, profit, and honour, and also knowing that they had lost their prince's favour for ever, (being banished from his court) and cast down to the horrible pits: you may be sure they would now add to their former pride, what malice and rage against Shaddai, and against his Son they could. Wherefore roving, and ranging in much fury from place to place, 1 Pet. v. 8. (if perhaps they might find something that was the king's) to revenge by

spoiling



spoiling of that, themselves on him. At last they happened into this spacious country of Universe, and steer therefore towards the town of Mansoul; and considering that that town was one of the chief works, and delights of king Shaddai: what do they, but after counsel taken, make an assault upon that. I say, they knew that Mansoul belonged unto Shaddai, for they were there when he built it, and beautified it for himself. So when they had found the place they shouted horribly for joy, and roared on it as a lion upon the prey: saying, now we have found the prize, and how to be revenged on king Shad-

dai for what he hath done to us, So they sat *Acouncil* down and called a council of war, and consider- *of war* ed with themselves what ways and methods they *held by* had best to ingage in, for the winning to them- *Diabolus* selves this famous town of Mansoul: and these *and his* four things were then propounded to be con- *fellowes* sidered of, *against*

First, "Whether they had best, all of them to *the town* shew themselves, in this design to the town of *of Man-* Mansoul." *soul.*

Secondly, "Whether they had best to go and sit down against Mansoul, in their now ragged, *Propo-* and beggarly guise." *sals.*

Thirdly, "Whether they had best to shew to Mansoul their intentions, and what design they came about, or whether to assault it by words and ways of deceit."

Fourthly, "Whether they had not best, to some of their companions to give out private orders to take the advantage, if they see one, or more of the principal townsmen, to shoot them: if thereby they shall judge their cause and design will the better be promoted."

It was answered to the first of these proposals, in the negative, viz. that that it would not be *The first* best that all should shew themselves before the *proposal.* town: because the appearance of many of them might alarm, and fright the town. Whereas, a few or but one of them, was not so likely to do it. And to inforce this advice to take place 'twas added further, that if Mansoul was frightened, or did take the alarm, 'Tis impossible, said Diabolus (for he spake now) that we should take the town, for that none can enter into it without its own consent. Let therefore but few, or but one assault Mansoul,

in mine opinion, said Diabolus, let me be he. *The second proposal.* Wherefore to this they all agreed, and then to the second proposal they came, namely, "Whether they had best to go and sit down before Mansoul, in their now ragged and beggarly guise." To which it was answered also in the negative, by no means; and that because, though the town of Mansoul, had been made to know, and to have to do before now, with things that are invisible; they did never as yet see any of their fellow-creatures in so sad, and rascal condition as they. And this was the advice of that fierce Alecto. Then said Apollyon, the advice is pertinent, for even one of us appearing to them as we are now, must needs, both beget, and multiply such thoughts in them, as will both put them into a consternation of spirit, and necessitate them to put themselves upon their guard: and if so, said he, then as my lord Alecto said but now, 'tis in vain for us to think of taking the town. Then said that mighty giant, Belzebub, the advice that already is given is safe, for though the men of Mansoul have seen such things as we once were, yet hitherto they did never behold such things as we now are. And 'tis best in mine opinion to come upon them in such a guise, as is common to, and most familiar among them. To this when they had consented: the next thing to be considered was, in what shape, hue or disguise, Diabolus had best to shew himself, when he went about to make Mansoul his own. Then one said one thing, and another the contrary, at last Lucifer answered, that in his opinion, 'twas best that his lordship should assume the body of some of those creatures that they of the town had dominion over. For, quoth he, these are not only familiar to them, but being under them, they will never imagine that an attempt should by them be made upon the town; and to blind all, let him assume the body of one of those beasts that Mansoul deems to be wiser than any of the rest, Gen. iii. 1. This advice was applauded of all, so it was determined that the giant Diabolus should assume the dragon, Rev. xx. 2. for that he was in those days as familiar with the town of Mansoul as now is the bird with the boy. For nothing that was in its primitive state was at all amazing to them. Then they proceeded to the third thing, which was,

3. Whe-

3. "Whether they had best to shew their intentions, or the design of his coming to Mansoul, or no?" This also was answered in the *proposal* negative: because of the weight that was in the former reasons, viz. for that Mansoul were a strong people, in a strong town, whose walls and gates were impregnable, (to say nothing of their castle) nor can they by any means be won but by their own consent. Besides, said Legion, (for he gave answer to this) a discovery of our own intentions, may make them send to their king for aid; and if that be done, I know, quickly what time of day 'twill be with us. Therefore let us assault them in all pretended fairness, covering of our intentions with all manner of lies, flatteries, delusive words; feigning of things that never will be, and promising of that to them, that they shall never find; this is the way to win Mansoul, and to make them of themselves to open their gates to us; yea, and to desire us too, to come in to them.

And the reason why I think that this project will do, is because the people of Mansoul now, are every one simple and innocent; all honest and true: nor do they as yet know what it is to be assaulted with fraud, guile, and hypocrisy. They are strangers to lying and dissimbling lips; wherefore, we cannot, if thus we be disguised, by them at all be discerned, our lies shall go for true sayings, and our dissimulations for upright dealings. What we promise them, they will in that believe us: especially, if in all our lies, and feigned words, we pretend great love to them, and that our design is only their advantage, and honour. Now there was not one bit of a reply against this, this went as a current down, as doth the water down a steep descent wherefore they go to consider of the last proposal, which was,

4. "Whether they had not best to give out orders to some of their company, to shoot *The fourth* some one or more of the principal of the *proposal* townsmen: if they judge that their cause may be promoted thereby."

This was carried in the affirmative, and the man that was designed by this stratagem to be destroyed, was one Mr. Resistance, otherwise called Captain Resistance. And



*Of Cap- tain Resistance* a great man in Mansoul this Captain Resistance was; and a man that the giant Diabolus, and his band, more feared than they feared the whole town of Mansoul besides. Now who should be the actor to do the murder; that was the next, and they appointed one Tisiphane, a fury of the lake to do it.

*The result of their council.* They thus having ended their council of war, rose up, and assy'd to do as they had determined; they marched towards Mansoul, but all in a manner invisible, save one only one; nor did he approach the town in his own likeness, but under the shade, and in the body of the dragon.

So they drew up, and sat down before Ear-gate, for that was the place of hearing for all without the town, as Eye-gate was the place of perfection. So, as I said, he came up with his train to the gate, and laid his ambuscado for Captain Resistance within Bow-marches shot of the town. This done, the giant ascended up close to the gate, and called to the town of Mansoul for audience. Nor took he any with him, but one Ill-pause, who was his orator in all difficult matters: Now, as I said, he being come up to the gate, (as the manner of those times was) sounded his trumpet for audience.

*The lords of Mansoul appeared.* At which the chief of the town of Mansoul, such as my Lord Innocent, my Lord Willbewill, my Lord Mayor, Mr. Recorder, and Captain Resistance came down to the wall to see who was there, and what was the matter. And my Lord Willbewill, when he had looked over and saw who stood at the gate, demanded what he was, wherefore he was come, and why he roused the town of Mansoul with so unusual a sound?

Diabolus then, as if he had been a lamb, began his oration, and said, "Gentlemen of the famous town of Mansoul, I am, as you may perceive, no far dweller from you, but near, and one that is bound by the King to do you my homage, and what service I can; wherefore that I may be faithful to myself, and to you, I have somewhat of concern to impart unto you. Wherefore grant me audience, and hear me

he patiently. And first, I will assure you, it is not myself but you; not mine, but your advantage that I seek by what I now do, as will full well be made manifest, by what I have opened my mind unto you. For, gentleman, I am (to tell you the truth) come to shew you how you may obtain great and ample deliverance from a bondage, that unawares to yourselves, you are captivated and enslaved under."

At this the town *Mansoul* of Mansoul began to prick up its ears, and what *ingaged* it is, pray what it is, thought they; and he said

"I have somewhat to say to you concerning your King, concerning his law, and also touching yourselves. Touching your king, I know he is great and potent, but yet, all that he hath said to you, is neither true nor yet for your advantage. 1. 'Tis not true, for that wherewith he hath hitherto awed you, shall not come to pass, nor be fulfilled, though you do the thing that he hath forbidden. But if there was danger, what a slavery is it to live always in fear of the greatest of punishments, for doing so small and trivial a thing as eating of a little fruit is. 2.

Touching his laws, this I say further, they are *Diabolus's* both unreasonable, intricate and intolerable. *subtily*

Unreasonable as we hinted before, for that the *made up of* punishment is not proportioned to the offence. *lies.*

There is great difference and disposition betwixt the life, and an apple: yet the one must go for the other by the law of your Shaddai. But it is also intricate,

in that he saith, first, you may eat of all; and yet afterwards forbids the eating of one. And then in the last place, it must needs be intolerable, for as much as that fruit which

you are forbidden to eat of (if you are forbidden any) is that, and that alone, which is able by your eating, to minister to you, a good, as yet unknown by you. This

is manifest by the very name of the tree, it is called the tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, and have you that knowledge as yet? No, no, nor can you conceive how good, how pleasant, and how much to be desired to make

me wile it is, so long as you stand by your king's commandment. Why should you be holden in ignorance and blindness? why should you not be enlarged in knowledge

and understanding? and now I ah ye inhabitants of the famous town of Mansoul, to speak more particularly to

ourselves, you are not a free people! you are kept both

in

in bondage and slavery, and that by a grievous threat: no reason being annexed, but so I will have it, so it shall be. And is it not grievous to think on, the very thing you are forbidden to do, might you but do it, would yield you both wisdom and honour: for then your ears will be opened, and you shall be as gods. Now since this is thus, quoth he, can you be kept by any prince in more slavery, and in greater bondage than you are under, this day? you are made underlings, and are wrapt up in inconveniencies, as I have well made appear: for what bondage greater than to be kept in blindness, will not reason tell you, that is better to have eyes than to be without them; and so to be at liberty, to be better than to be shut up in a dark and stinking cave.

And just now while Diabolus was speaking *Captain* these words to Mansoul, Tisphane shot at *Resistance* tain Resistance, where he stood on the gate, and  *slain.* mortally wounded him in the head; so that he to the amazement of the townsmen, and the in-

couragement of Diabolus, fell down dead quite over the wall. Now when Captain Resistance was dead (and he was the only man of war in the town) poor Mansoul was wholly left naked of courage, nor had she now

*Mr. Ill-* any heart to resist. But this was as the devil *pause's* would have it. Then stood forth that he, Mr. *speech to* Ill-pause, that Diabolus brought with him, who *the town* was his orator, and he addressed himself to speak *of Man-* to the town of Mansoul: the tenure of whose  *soul.* speech here follows.

Ill-pause. "Gentleman, quoth he, it is my master's happiness, that he has this day a quiet and teachable auditory: and it is hoped by us, that we shall prevail with you not to cast off good advice: my master has a very great love for you, and although, as he very well knows, that he runs the hazard of the anger of king Shaddai, yet love to you will make him do more than that. Nor doth there need that a word more should be spoken to confirm for truth what he hath said; there is not a word but carries with it self-evidence in its bowels; the very name of the tree may put an end to all controversy, in this matter. I therefore at this time shall only add this advice to you, under, and by the leave of my Lord, (and with that he made Diabolus a very low con-

gee)



See.) Consider his words, look on the tree, and the promising fruit thereof; remember also that yet you know but little, and that this is the way to know more: and if your reasons be not conquered to accept of such good counsel, you are not the men that I took you to be. But when the towns-folk saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eye, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, they did as Ill-pause advised, they took and did eat thereof. Now, this I should have told you before, that even then, when this Ill-pause was making of his speech to the towns-men, my *My Lord* Lord Innocency, (whither by a shot from the *Innocency's* camp of the giant, or from some sinking qualm *cy's* that suddenly took him, or whether by the stink *death.* ing breath of that treacherous villain old Ill-pause, for so I am most apt to think) sunk down in the place where he stood, nor could he be brought to life again. Thus these two brave men died: brave men I call them, for they were the beauty and glory of Mansoul, so long as they lived therein: nor did they now remain any more, a noble spirit in Mansoul, they all fell down, and yielded obedience to Diabolus, and became his slaves and vassals as you shall hear.

Now these being dead, what do the rest of the towns-folk, but as men that had found a *The town* a fool's paradise, they presently, as before was *taken,* hinted, tall to prove the truth of the giant's *and how.* words, and first they did as Ill-pause had taught them; they looked, they considered, they were taken with the forbidden fruit, they took thereof, and did eat: And having eaten, they became immediately drunken therewith; so they opened the gates, both Ear-gate, and Eye-gate, and let in Diabolus with all his bands, quite forgetting their good Shaddai, his law, and the judgment that he had annexed with solemn-threatening to the breach thereof.

Diabolus having now obtained entrance in at the gates of the town, marches up to the middle thereof, to make his conquest as sure as he could, and finding by this time the affections of the people warmly inclining to him, he as thinking 'twas best striking while the iron is hot, made this further deceivable speech unto them, saying, 'alas my poor Mansoul! I have done thee indeed this service,

as

as to promote thee to honour, and to greaten thy liberty; but alas! alas! poor Mansoul, thou wantest now one to defend thee, for assure thyself, that when Shaddai shall hear what is done, he will come: for sorry will he be that thou hast broken his bonds, and cast his cords away from thee. What wilt thou do, wilt thou after enlarge-

ment suffer thy privileges to be invaded and taken away? or what wilt resolve with thyself! Then they all with one consent said to this bramble, do thou reign over us. So he accepted the motion, and became the king of the town of Mansoul. This being done, the next thing was to give him possession of the castle, and so of the whole strength of the town. Wherefore, fortified it into the castle he goes (it was that which for himself. Shaddai built in Mansoul for his own delight, and pleasure.) This now was become a den and hold for the giant Diabolus.

Now having got possession of this stately palace, or castle, what doth he, but make it a garrison for himself, and strengthens and fortifies it of provision against the king Shaddai, or those that should endeavour the regaining of it, to him, and his obedience again.

This done, but not thinking himself yet secure enough, in the next place, he bethinks himself of new modelling the town; and so he does, setting up one, and putting down another at pleasure. Wherefore my lord Mayor, whose name was my Lord Understanding, and Mr. Recorder, whose name was Mr. Conscience, those he puts out of place and power.

As for my Lord Mayor, though he was an understanding man, and one too that had complied with the rest of the town of Mansoul, in admitting of the giant into the town, yet Diabolus thought not fit to let him abide in his former lustre and glory, because he was a seeing-man. Wherefore he darkeneth it not only by taking from him his office and power, 2 Cor. iv. 4. but by building of an high and strong tower, just between the sun's reflections, and the windows of my lord's palace; by which means his house and all, and the whole of his habitation,

habitation, was made as dark as darkness itself. And thus being alienated from the light, he became as one that was born blind. Ephes. iv. 18, 19. To this his house, my Lord was confined, as to a prison; nor might he upon his parole go further than within his own bounds. And now had he had an heart to do for Mansoul, what could he do for it, or wherein could he be profitable to her? So then so long as Mansoul was under the power of government of Diabolus; (and so long it was under him, as it was obedient to him; which was, even until by a war it was rescued out of his hand) so long my Lord Mayor was rather an impediment in, than an advantage to the famous town of Mansoul.

As for Mr. Recorder, before the town was taken, he was a man well read in the laws of his king, and also a man of courage and faithfulness to *The Re-* speak truth at every occasion; and he had a *corder* tongue as bravely hung, as he had a head fil- *put out of* led with judgment. Now this man Diabolus *place.* could by no means abide, because though he gave his consent to his coming into the town, yet he could not, by all wiles, trials, stratagems, and devices that he could use, make him wholly his own. True, he was much degenerated from his former king, and also much pleased with many of the giant's laws and service; but all this would not do, forasmuch as he was not wholly his. He would now and then think upon Shaddai, and have dread of his law upon him, and then he would speak with a voice, as great a- *He some-* gainst Diabolus, as when a lion roareth. *Yea times* and would also at certain times when his fits *speaks for* were upon him (for you must know that some- *his first* times he had terrible fits) make the town of *king.* Mansoul shake with his voice; and therefore the now king of Mansoul could not abide him.

Diabolus therefore feared the Recorder more than any that was left alive in the town of Mansoul, because, as I said, his words did shake the whole town: they were like the rattling thunder, and also like thunder claps. Since therefore the giant could not make him wholly his own, what doth he do but studies all that he could, to debauch the old gentleman, and by debauchery, *He is* to stupify his mind, and more harden his heart *more de-*



*baunched* in ways of vanity. And as he attempted, so he  
*than be-* accomplished his design: he debauched the man  
*fore.* and by little and little, so drew him into sin and  
 wickedness, and at last he was not only de-  
 baunched as at first: and so by consequence defiled, but  
 was almost (at last, I say) past all conscience of sin.

And this was the farthest Diabolus could go. Where-  
 fore he bethinks him of another project, and that was to  
 persuade the men of the town that Mr. Recorder was  
 mad, and so not to be regarded. And for this he urged  
 his fits, and said if he be himself, why doth he not do  
 thus always? but, quoth he, as all mad folk have their  
 fits, and in them their raving language; so hath

*The town* this old and doating gentleman. Thus by one  
*taking off* means or another, he quickly got Mansoul to  
*from* slight, neglect, and despite whatever Mr. Recor-  
*der could* der could say. For besides what already you  
*heeding* have heard Diabolus had a way to make the  
*of him.* old gentleman when he was merry, unsay and  
 deny when he in his fits had affirmed. and indeed, this  
 was the next way to make himself ridiculous, and to cause  
 that no man should regard him. Also, now he

*How con-* never spake freely for king Shaddai, but always  
*science be-* by force and constraint. Besides, he would  
*comes so* at one time be hot against that, at which at a-  
*ridiculous,* nother he would hold his peace. So uneven  
*as with* was he now in his doings. Sometimes he  
*carnal* would be, as if fast asleep, and again sometimes,  
*men it is.* as dead even then when the whole town of  
 Mansoul was in her career after vanity, and in  
 her dance after the giant's pipe.

Wherefore sometimes when Mansoul did use to be  
 frightened with the thundering voice of the Recorder that  
 was, and when they did tell Diabolus of it, he would an-  
 swe that what the old gentleman said, was neither of  
 love to him, nor pity to them, but of a foolish fondness  
 that he had to be prating; and so would hush still, and  
 put all to quiet again. And that he might leave no ar-  
 gument un urged that might tend to make them secure, he  
 said, and said it often; O Mansoul! Consider that not-  
 withstanding the old gentleman's rage, and the rattle of  
 his high and thundring words, you hear nothing of Shad-  
 dai himself (when liar, and deceiver, that he was, every

out-

our cry of Mr Recorder against the sin of Mansoul, was the voice of God in him to them. *Satanical*  
 But he goes on and says; you see that he va- *Rhetorick.*  
 ques not the loss, nor rebellion of the town of  
 Mansoul, nor will he trouble himself with calling of his  
 town to a reckoning for their giving of themselves to me.  
 He knows that though ye were his, now you are lawfully  
 mine; so leaving us one to another, he now hath shaken  
 his hand of us.

Moreover, O Mansoul I quoth he, consider how I have  
 served you, even to the uttermost of my power; and that  
 with the best that I have, could get, or procure for you  
 in all the world: besides, I dare say, that the laws and  
 customs that you now are under, and by which you do  
 homage to me, do yield you more solace and content,  
 than did the paradise that at first you possessed. Your li-  
 berty also, as yourselves do very well know,  
 has been greatly widened, and enlarged by me; *His flatteries.*  
 whereas I found you a pen'd up people. I have *ries.*  
 not laid any restraint upon you; you have no  
 law, statute, or judgment of mine to fright you;  
 I call none of you to account for your doings, *Conscience.*  
 except the madman, you know who I mean;  
 I have granted you to live, each man like a prince in his  
 own, even with as little controul from me, as I my self  
 have from you.

And thus would Diabolus hush up, and quiet the town  
 of Mansoul, when the Recorder that was, did at times  
 molest them; yea and with such cursed orati-  
 ons as these, would set the whole town in a *Men some*  
 rage, and fury against the old gentleman: *times an*  
 Yea, the rascal crew, at sometimes he would *gry with*  
 be for destroying of him: They have often *their con-*  
 wished (in my hearing) that he had lived a *sciences.*  
 thousand miles off from them; his company,  
 and his words, yea, the sight of him, and especially when  
 they remembered how in old times he did use to threaten  
 and condemn them: (for all he was now so debauched)  
 did terrify and afflict them fore.

But all wishes were vain, for I do not know how, un-  
 less by the power of Shaddai, and his wisdom,  
 he was preserved in being amongst them. Be- *Illu*  
 sides, his house was as strong as a castle, and *thoughts.*

*Of fears.* stood hard to a strong hold of the town; moreover, if at any time any of the crew or rabble attempted to make him away, he could pull up the sluices, and let in such floods as would drown all round about him.

*The will* But to leave Mr. Recorder, and to come to my Lord Willbewill, another of the gentry of the famous town of Mansoul. This Willbewill was as high born, as any man in Mansoul, and was as much if not more a freeholder than many of them were; besides, if I remember my tale aright, he had some privilege peculiar to himself in the famous town of Mansoul: Now together with these, he was a man of great strength, resolution, and courage, nor in his occasion could any turn him away. But I say, whether he was proud of his estate, privilege; strength or what, (but sure it was through pride of something) he scorns now to be a slave in Mansoul: and therefore resolves to bear office under Diabolus, that he might (such an one as he was) be a petty ruler and governor in Mansoul. And (head-strong man that he was) thus he began betimes; for this man, when Diabolus did make his oration at Ear-gate, was one of the first that was for consenting to his words, and for accepting of his counsel as wholesome, and that was for the opening of the gate, and for letting him into the town; wherefore Diabolus had a kindness for him; and therefore he designed for him a place; and perceiving the valour and stoutness of the man, he coveted to have him for one of his great ones, to act and do in matters of the highest concern.

*The will takes place under Diabolus.* So he sent for him, and talked with him of that secret matter that lay in his breast, but there needed not much persuasion in the case. For as at first he was willing, that Diabolus should be let into the town; so now he was as willing to serve him there; when the tyrant therefore perceived the willingness of my lord to serve him, and that his mind stood bending that way, *Heart,* he forthwith made him the captain of the castle, *flesh. senses.* governor of the wall, and keeper of the gates of Mansoul: yea, there was a clause in his commission, that nothing without him should be done in all the town



of Mansoul. Rom. viii. 7. So that now next to Diabolus himself, who but my Lord Willbewill in all the town of Mansoul; nor could any thing now be done, but at his will and pleasure throughout the town of Mansoul. He

had also one Mr. Mind for his clerk, a man to speak on every way like his master; for he and his lord were in principle one, and in practice not far asunder. And now was Mansoul brought under to purpose, and made to fulfil the lusts of the will, and of the mind, Ephes. ii. 2, 3.

But it will not out of my thoughts, what a desperate one this Willbewill was, when power was put into his hand. First, he flatly denied that he owed any suit, or service to his former prince, and liege lord. This done, in the next place he took an oath, and swore fidelity to his great master Diabolus, and then being stated and settled in his places, offices, will advancements and preferments: Oh! You cannot think unless you had seen it, the strange work, that this workman made in the town of Mansoul.

First, he maligned Mr. Recorder to death, he would neither indure to see him, nor to hear the words of his mouth; he would shut his eyes when he saw him, and stop his ears when he heard him speak: Also he could not indure that so much as a fragment of the law of Shaddai should be any where seen in the town. For example, his clerk Mr. Mind had some old, rent, and torn parchments of the law of good Shaddai in his house, but when Willbewill saw them, he cast them behind his back. Neh. ix. 26. True Mr. Recorder had some of the laws in his study, but my lord could by no means come at them; he also thought and said, that the windows of my Lord Mayor's house, were always too light for the profit of the town of Mansoul. The light of a candle he could not indure. Now nothing at all pleased Willbewill, but what pleased Diabolus his lord.

There was none like him to trumpet about the streets, the brave nature, the wise conduct, and great glory of the king Diabolus; He would range and rove throughout all the streets of Mansoul, to cry up to his illagtrious lord, and would make himself even as an abject, among the base and rascal crew, to cry

up his valiant prince. And I say, when, and, wherefoever he found these vassals, he would even make himself as one of them. In all ill courses he would act without bidding, and do mischief without commandment.

The lord Willbewill also had a deputy under him, and his name was Mr. Affection; one that was also greatly debauched in his principles, and answerable thereto in his life: he was wholly given to the flesh. Rom. i. 25, and therefore they called him Vile affection; now there was he, and one Carnal lust, the daughter of Mr. Mind,

(like to like, quoth the devil to the collier) that *A match* fell in love, and made a match, and were married: and as I take it, they had several children, as *Vile affection* and *Carnal lust* impudent, Blackmouth and Hate, reproach; these three were black boys; and besides these they had three daughters, as Scorn, truth, and Slight-God, and the name of the youngest was Revenge; these were all married in the town, and also begot and yielded many bad brats, too many to be here inserted. But to pass by this.

When the Giant had thus ingarrisoned himself in the town of Mansoul, and had put down and set up whom he thought good; he betakes himself to defacing. Now there was in the market-place of Mansoul, and also upon the gates of the castle, an image of the blessed king Shaddai, this image was so exactly ingraven (and it was ingraven in gold) that it did the most resemble

*What No-truth* Shaddai himself of any thing that then was extant in the world. This he basely commanded to be defaced, and it was as basely done by the hand of Mr. No-truth. Now you must know,

that as Diabolus had commanded, and that by the hand of Mr. No-truth, the image of Shaddai was defaced. He likewise gave order that the same Mr. No-truth should set up in its stead the horrid and formidable image of Diabolus; to the great contempt of the former king, and debasing of his town of Mansoul.

*All law-books destroyed that could be so.* Moreover, Diabolus made havock of all remains of the laws and statutes of Shaddai, that could be found in the town of Mansoul; to wit, such as contained either the doctrines of morals, with all civil and natural documents. Also relative severities he sought to extinguish.

To

To be short, there was nothing of the remains of good in Mansoul which he, and Willbewill sought not to destroy; for their design was to turn Mansoul into a brute, and to make it like to the sensual sow; by the hand of Mr. No truth.

When he had destroyed what law, and good orders he could, then further to effect his design, namely, to alienate Mansoul from Shaddai her king, he commands, and they set up his own vain edicts, statutes and commandments, in all places of resort, or concourse in Mansoul, to wit, such as gave liberty to the lusts of the flesh, the lusts of the eyes, and the pride of life; which are not of Shaddai, but of the world, 1 John ii. 16. He encouraged, countenanced, and promoted lasciviousness, and all ungodliness there. Yea, did Diabolus to encourage wickedness in the town of Mansoul, he promised them peace, content, joy, and bliss in doing his commands, and that they should never be called to an account for their not doing the contrary. And let this serve to give a taste to them that love to hear tell of what is done beyond their knowledge, afar off in other countries.

Now Mansoul being wholly at his beck, and brought wholly to his bow; nothing was heard or seen therein but that which tended to set up him.

But now, he having disabled the Lord Mayor, *They have* and Mr. Recorder from bearing of office in a new Mansoul: and seeing that the town before he Lord came to it, was the most ancient of corporations in the world: and fearing, if he did not *and a* maintain greatness, they at any time should *new Re-* object that he had done them an injury; therefore I say, (that they might see that he did not intend to lessen their grandeur, or to take from them any of their advantagious things) he did choose for them a Lord Mayor, and a Recorder, himself: and such as contented them at the heart, and such also as pleased him wondrous well.

The name of the mayor that was of Diabolus's making, was, the Lord Lustings. A Lord man that had neither eyes, nor ears, all that he *Mayor.* did whether as a man, or as an officer, he did naturally as doth the beast. And that which made him yet the more ignoble, though not to Mansoul, yet



to them that beheld, and were grieved for its ruins, was, that he never could never favour good but evil.

The Recorder, was one whose name was *The new Recorder*. Forget good. And a very sory fellow he was. He could remember nothing but mischief, and to do it with delight. He was naturally prone to do things that were hurtful; even hurtful to the town of Mansoul, and to all the dwellers there. These two therefore, by their power, and practice, example and smiles upon evil; did much more gramman, *Thoughts*. and settle the common people in hurtful ways. For who doth not perceive but when those that sit aloft, are vile, and corrupt themselves; they corrupt the whole region and country where they are.

Besides these, Diabolus made several burges. *He doth make them new aldermen, and who.* ses, and aldermen in Mansoul; such as out of whom the town, when it needed, might chuse them officers, governors, and magistrates. And these are the names of the chief of them. Mr. Incrudulity, Mr. Haughty, Mr. Swearing, Mr. Whoreing, Mr. Hard-heart, Mr. Pitiless, Mr. Fury, Mr. No-truth, Mr. Stand-to-lies Mr. False-peace, Mr. Drunkenness, Mr. Cheating, Mr. Atheism, thirteen in all. Mr. Incrudulity is the eldest, and Mr. Atheism the youngest of the company.

There was also an election of common counsell-men, and others; as bailiffs, serjeants, constables, and others, but all of them like to those aforementioned, being either fathers, brothers, cousins, or nephews to them. Whose names, for brevities sake I omit to mention.

When the giant had thus far proceeded in his work, in the next place, he betook him to build some strong holds in the town. And he built three that seemed to be impregnable. The first he called the hold of Desiance, because it was made to command the whole town, and to keep it from the knowledge of its ancient king. The second he called Midnight hold, because it was built on purpose to keep Mansoul from the true knowledge of itself. The third was called Sweet-sin-hold, because by that he fortified Mansoul against all desires of good. The first of these holds stood close by Eye-gate, that as much as might be, might

might be darkned there. The second was built hard to the Old Castle, to the end that that might be made more blind (if possible.) And the third stood in the market-place.

He that Diabolus made governor over the first of these, was one Spite-God, a most blasphemous wretch. He came with the whole rabble of them that came against Mansoul at first, and was himself one of themselves. He that was made the governor of Midnight-hold was one Love-no-light. He was also of them that came first against the town. And he that was made the governor of the hold called Sweet-sin-hold, was one whose name, was Loves-flesh, he was also a very lewd fellow, but not of that country where the other are bound. This fellow could find more sweetness when he stood sucking of a lust, then he did in the paradise of God.

And now Diabolus thought himself safe; he had taken Mansoul; he had ingarrisoned himself therein; he had put down the old officers, and had set up new ones, he had defaced the image of Shaddai, *Diabolus* and had set up his own; he had spoiled the old *has made* law books, and had promoted his own vain *his nest* lies; he had made him new magistrates, and set up new aldermen; he had built him new holds, and had named them for himself. And all this he did to make himself secure, in case the good Shaddai, or his Son, should come to make an incursion upon him.

Now you may well think, that long before this time word, by some or other could not but *Tidings* be carried to the good king Shaddai, how his *carried to* Mansoul in the continent of Universe was lost; *the court*, and that the runagate giant Diabolus, once *of what* one of his majesty's servants, had in rebellion *had hap-* against the king made sure thereof for himself: *pened to* Yes, tidings were carried and brought to the *Mansoul*. king thereof, and that to a very circumstance.

As first, how Diabolus came upon Mansoul (they being a simple people and innocent) with craft, subtilty, lies and guile; *Item*, that he had treacherously slain the right noble and valiant Captain Resistance, as he stood upon the gate with the rest of the townsmen; *Item*, How my brave Lord Innocent fell down dead (with grief some say, or with being poisoned with the stinking breath of one Ill-pause,

as say others) at the hearing of his just Lord, and right-  
ful Prince Shaddai so abused by the mouth of so filthy a  
Diabolian, as that varlet Ill-pause was. The messenger  
further told, that after this Ill-pause had made a short  
oration to the townsmen, in behalf of Diabolus his master,  
the simple town believing that what was said was true,  
with one consent did open Ear-gate, the chief gate of the  
corporation, and did let him with his crew into a posses-  
sion of the famous town of Mansoul. He had further  
shewed, how Diabolus had served the Lord Mayor, and  
Mr. Recorder, viz. that he had put them from all place  
of power and trust; *Item*, he shewed also that my Lord  
Willbewill was turned a very rebel and runagate, and  
that so was one Mr. Mind his clerk, and that they two  
did range and revel it all the town over, and teach the  
wicked ones their ways. He said moreover, that this  
Willbewill was put into great trust. And particularly,  
that Diabolus had put into Willbewill's hand, all the  
strong places in Mansoul: And that Mr. Affection was  
made my Lord Willbewill's deputy in his most rebellious  
affairs. Yea, said the messenger, this monster, Lord Will-  
bewill, has openly disavowed his king Shaddai, and hath  
horribly given his faith, and plighted his troth to Diabo-  
lus.

Also said the messenger, besides all this, the new king,  
or rather rebellious tyrant, over the once famous, but now  
perishing town of Mansoul, has set up a Lord Mayor, and  
a Recorder of his own. For Mayor he has set up one  
Mr. Lustings, and for Recorder, Mr. Forget-good: two  
of the vilest of all the town of Mansoul. This faithful  
messenger also proceeded, and told what a sort a new bur-  
gesses Diabolus had made, also that he had builded sever-  
al strong forts, towers, and strong holds in Mansoul.  
He told too, the which I had almost forgot, how Diabolus  
had put the town of Mansoul into arms, the better to ca-  
pacitate them in his behalf to make resistance against Shad-  
dai their king, should he come to reduce them to their  
former obedience.

Now this tidings-teller did not deliver his relation of  
things in private, but in open court, the king and his son,  
high lords, chief captains, and nobles, being all there  
present to hear. But by that they had heard the whole

story,



story, it would have amazed one, to have seen, had he been there to behold it, what sorrow and grief, and compunction of spirit there was among all sorts, to think that famous Mansoul, was now taken: only the king, and his son foresaw all this long before, yea, and sufficiently provided for the relief of Mansoul, though they told not every body thereof: yet because they also would have a share in condoling of the misery of Mansoul, therefore they also did, and that at a rate of the highest degree, bewail the losing of Mansoul. The king said plainly, 'That it grieved him at the heart,' Gen. vi. 6. and you may be sure that his son was not a whit behind him. Thus gave they conviction to all about them, that they had love and compassion for the famous town of Mansoul. Well, when the king and his son were retired into the privy chamber, there they again consulted about what they had designed before, viz. 'That as Mansoul should in time be suffered to be lost; so as certainly it should be recovered again;' recovered, I say, in such a way, as that both the king and his son would get themselves eternal fame and glory thereby. Wherefore after this consult, the son of Shaddai (a sweet and comely person, and one that had always great affection for those that were in affliction, but one that had mortal enmity in his heart against Diabolus, because he was designed for it, and because he sought his crown and dignity.

This son of Shaddai, I say, having stricken hands with his father, and promised that he would be his servant to recover his Mansoul again, Isa. xlix. 5. stood by his resolution, 1 Tim. i. 15. nor would he repent of the same, Hosea xiii. 14. The purport of which agreement was this; viz, "That at a certain time prefixed by both, the king's son should take a journey into the country of Universe, and there, in a way of justice and equity, by making of amends for the follies of Mansoul, he should lay a foundation of her perfect deliverance from Diabolus and from his tyranny."

Moreover, Emanuel resolved to make, at a time convenient, a war upon the giant Diabolus, even while he was

*Grief at court to hear the tidings.*  
*The secret of his purpose.*  
*The Son of God.*  
*A brave design on foot for the town of Mansoul.*

*The Holy Ghost,*

possessed of the famous town of Mansoul. And that he would fairly, by strength of hand, drive him out of his hold, his nest, and take it to himself to be his habitation.

*The Holy Scriptures.*

This now being resolved upon, order was given to the Lord Chief Secretary, to draw up a fair record of what was determined, and to cause that it should be published in all the corners of the kingdom of Universe. A short breviat of the contents thereof, you may if you please, take here as follows.

"Let all men know who are concerned, that the Son of Shaddai, the great king, is engaged by covenant to his father, to bring his Mansoul to him again; Yea, and to put Mansoul too, thro' the power of his matchless love, into a far better, and more happy condition, than 'twas before it was taken by Diabolus."

These papers therefore were published in several places, to the no little molestation of the tyrant Diabolus, for now, thought he, I shall be molested, and my habitation will be taken from me.

But when this matter, I mean this purpose of the king and his son, did at first take air at court: who can tell how the high lords, chief captains, and noble princes that were there, were taken with the business. First, they whispered it one to another, and after that it began to ring out throughout the king's palace, all wondering at the glorious design that between the king and his son was on foot for the miserable town of Mansoul. Yea, the courtiers could scarce do any thing, either for the king or kingdom, but they would mix with the doing thereof, a noise of the love of the king and his son, that they had for the town of Mansoul.

*Among the Angels.*

*Diabolus perplexed at the news.*

Nor could these lords, high captains, and princes, be content to keep this news at court, yea, before the records thereof were perfected, themselves came down and told it in Universe. At last it came to the ears, as I said, of Diabolus, to his no little discontent. For you must think it would perplex him, to hear of such a design against him;

And him; well, but after a few casts in his mind, he concluded upon these four things.

First, That this news, this good tidings (if possible) should be kept from the ears of the town of Mansoul: For, said he, if they shall once come to the knowledge that Shaddai their former king, and Emanuel his son, are contriving of good for the town of Mansoul: what can be expected by me, but that Mansoul will make a revolt from under my hand and government, and return again to him.

Now to accomplish this his design he renews his flattery with my Lord Willbewill, and also gives him strict charge and command, that he should keep watch by day, and by night at all the gates of the town, especially Ear-gate and Eye-gate:

For I hear of a design, quoth he, a design to make us all traitors, and that Mansoul must be reduced to its first bondage again. I hope they are but flying stories, quoth he, however let no such news, by any means be let into Mansoul, lest the people be dejected thereat: I think my lord it can be no welcome news to you, I am sure it is none to me. And I think that at this time it should be all our wisdoms and cares, to nip the head of all

such rumours as shall tend to trouble our people: Wherefore, I desire my lord, that you will in this matter do as I say, let there be strong guards daily kept at every gate of the town. Stop also and examine, from whence such came, that you perceive do from far come hither to trade; nor let them by any means be admitted into Mansoul, unless you shall plainly perceive,

that they are favourers of our excellent government. I command moreover, said Diabolus, that there be spies continually walking up and down the town of Mansoul, and let them have power to suppress, and destroy, any that they shall perceive to be plotting against us, or that shall prate of what by Shaddai and Emanuel is intended.

This



This therefore was accordingly done, my Lord Willbewill hearkened to his lord and master, went willingly after the commandment, and with all the diligence he could, keep any that would, from going out abroad, or that sought to bring these tidings to Mansoul, from coming into the town.

Secondly, This done, in the next place, Diabolus that he might make Mansoul as sure as he could, frames and imposes a new oath, and horrible covenant upon the townsfolk.

*A new oath imposed upon Mansoul.* To wit, "That they should never desert him, nor his covenant, nor yet betray him, nor seek to alter his laws: but that they should own, confess, stand by, and acknowledge him for their rightful king in defence to any that do, or hereafter shall, by any pretence, law, or title whatever, lay claim to the town of Mansoul. Thinking belike that Shaddai had not power to absolve them from this covenant with death, and agreement with hell, Isa. xxviii. 15. Nor did the silly Mansoul stick or boggle at all at this most monstrous engagement, but as if it had been a sprat, in the mouth of the whale, they swallowed it without any chewing. Were they troubled at it? Nay they rather bragged and boasted of their so brave fidelity to the tyrant their pretended king, swearing that they would never be changlings, nor forsake their old lord for a new.

*Odious and theistical pamphlets and filthy ballads and romances full of bal-dry.* Thus did Diabolus tie poor Mansoul fast, but jealousy that never thinks itself strong enough, put him in the next place upon another exploit, which was yet more, if possible to debauch this town of Mansoul: Wherefore he caused by the hand of one Mr. Filth, an odious, nasty, lascivious piece of beastliness to be drawn up in writing, and to be set upon the castle gates; whereby he granted, and gave licence to all his true and trusty sons in Mansoul, to do whatsoever their lustful appetites prompted them to do, and that no man was to let, hinder or controul them, upon pain of incurring the displeasure of their prince.

Now this he did for these reasons:

1. That the town of Mansoul might be yet made weaker and weaker, and so more unable, should tidings come

that their redemption was designed: To believe, hope, or consent to the truth thereof. For reason says, the bigger the sinner, the less grounds of hopes of mercy.

Secondly, the reason was, if perhaps Emanuel the Son of Shaddai their king, by seeing the horrible, and prophane doings of the town of Mansoul, might repent, tho' entered into a covenant of redeeming them, of pursuing that covenant of their redemption; for he knew that Shaddai was holy, and that his Son Emanuel was holy, yea, he knew it by woful experience: For, for the iniquity and sin of Diabolus, was he cast from the highest orbs. Wherefore, what more rational than for him to conclude, that thus, for sin, it might fare with Mansoul. But fearing also lest this knot should break, he betinks himself of another, viz.

Thirdly, To endeavour to possess all hearts in the town of Mansoul, that Shaddai was raising of an army, to come to overthrow, and utterly to destroy this town of Mansoul, and this he did to forestall any tidings that might come to their ears, of their deliverance; for, thought he, if I bruit this, the tidings that might come after will all be swallowed up of this, for what else will Mansoul say, when they shall hear that they must be delivered, but that the true meaning is, Shaddai intends to destroy them: Wherefore he summons the whole town into the market-place, and there, with a deceitful tongue, thus he addres- ses himself unto them.

"Gentlemen, and my very good friends,  
 you are all, as you know, my legal subjects, *The place*  
 and men of the famous town of Mansoul; *of hearing*  
 you know how, from the first day that I have *and of con-*  
 been with you until now, I have behaved *sidering.*  
 myself among you, and what liberty and  
 great privileges you have enjoyed under my government,  
 I hope to your honour and mine, and also to your con-  
 tent and delight; now my famous Mansoul, a noise of  
 trouble there is abroad, of trouble to the town of Man-  
 soul, sorry I am therefore for your sakes; for I received  
 out now, by the post, from my Lord Lucifer (and he ureth  
 to have good intelligence) that your old King Shaddai is  
 raising of an army to come against you, to destroy you  
 root and branch: and this, O Mansoul! is now the cause  
 that, at this time, I have called you together; namely,

to advise what, in this juncture, is best to be done; for my part I am but one, and can with ease shift for myself, did I list to seek my own ease, and to leave my Mansoul in all danger; but my heart is so firmly united to you, and so unwilling am I to leave you, that I am willing to stand and fall with you to the utmost hazard that can befall me. What say you, O my Mansoul! Will you now desert your old friend, or do you think of standing by me? Then, as one man, with one mouth, they cried out together, Let him die the death that will not."

Then said Diabolus again, "Is it not vain for us to hope for quarter, for this King knows not how to shew it;

*Very de-  
ceivable  
language.* true, perhaps, he at his first sitting down before us, will talk of and pretend to mercy, that thereby, with the more ease and less trouble, he may again make himself, the master of Mansoul; whatever therefore he shall say,

believe not one syllable or tittle of it, for all such language is but to overcome us, and to make us, while we wallow in our blood, the trophies of his merciless victory. My mind is therefore, that we resolve, to the last man, to resist him, and not to believe him upon any terms; for in at that door will come our danger: but shall we be flattered out of our lives? I hope you know more of the rudiments of politics than to suffer yourselves so pitifully to be served.

"But suppose he should, if he get us to yield, save some of our lives, or the lives of some of them that are underlings in Mansoul, what help can that be to you that are the chief of the town, especially of you whom I have set up, and whose greatness has been procured by you through your faithful sticking to me?

*Lying language.* And suppose again, that he should give quarter to every one of you, be sure he will bring you into that bondage under which

you were captivated before, or a worse, and then what good will your lives do you? Shall you with him live in pleasure as you do now? No, no, you must be bound by laws that will pinch you, and be made to do that which

*He is afraid  
of losing of  
Mansoul.* at present is hateful to you; I am for you if you are for me, and it is better to die valiantly than to live like pitiful slaves. But I say, the life of a slave will be counted too good for Mansoul now: blood, blood, no-  
thing



thing but blood is in every blast of Shaddai's trumpet against poor Mansoul now; pray be concerned, I hear he is coming up, and stand to your arms, that now while you have any leisure, I may learn you some feats of war. Armour for you I have, and by me it is; yea, and it is sufficient for Mansoul from top to toe, nor can you be hurt by what his force can do, if you shall keep it well girt and fastened about you: come therefore to my castle and welcome, and harness yourselves for the war. There is helmet, breast-plate, sword, and shield, and what not, that will make you fight like men.

*He puts them upon arming of themselves.*

First, "My helmet, otherwise called an head-piece, is hope of doing well at last, what lives soever you live. This is that which they had, who said, that they should have peace though they walked in the wickedness of their heart, to add drunkenness to thirst; Deut. xxix. 19. a piece of approved armour is this, and whosoever has it, and can hold it, so long no arrow, dart, sword or shield can hurt him: this therefore keep on, and thou wilt keep off many a blow, my Mansoul."

*His helmet.*

Second, "My breast-plate is a breast-plate of iron; Rev. ix. 9. I had it forged in mine own country, and all my soldiers are armed therewith; in plain language, it is an hard heart, an heart as hard as iron, and as much past feeling as a stone, the which if you get, and keep, neither mercy shall win you, nor judgment fright you. This therefore is a piece of armour, most necessary for all to put on that hate Shaddai, and that would fight against him under my banner."

*His breast-plate.*

Third, "My sword is a tongue that is set on fire of hell, Psal. lvii. 4. Psal. lxi. 3. Jam. iii. 5, 6, 7, 8, 9. and that can bend itself to speak evil of Shaddai, his Son, his ways, and people; use this it has been tried a thousand times twice told, whoever hath it, keeps it, and makes that use of it as I would have him, can never be conquered by mine enemy."

*His sword.*

Fourth, "My shield is unbelief, Job xv. 26. Psal. lxxvi. 3. Mark vi. 5, 6. or calling

*His shield.*

into question the truth of the word, or all the sayings that speak of the judgment that Shaddai has appointed for wicked men, use this shield, many attempts he has made upon it, and sometimes, 'tis true, it has been bruised; but they that have writ of the wars of Emanuel against my servants, have testified, that he could do no mighty work there, because of their unbelief; now to handle this weapon of mine aright, it is not to believe things because they are true, of what sort, or by whomsoever asserted; if he speaks of judgment, care not for it; if he speaks of mercy, care not for it; if he promises, if he swears that he would do to Mansoul, if it turns, no hurt but good, regard not what is said, question the truth of all, for it is to wield the shield of unbelief aright, and as my servants ought and do; and he that doth otherwise loves me not, nor do I count him but an enemy to me."

Fifth, "Another part or piece, said Diabolus, of mine excellent armour is, a dumb and prayerless spirit, a spirit that scorns to cry for mercy; wherefore be you, my Mansoul, sure that you make use of this: What! cry for quarter, never do that if you would be mine: I know you are stout men, and am sure that I have clad you with that which is armour of proof, wherefore to cry to Shaddai for mercy, let that be far from you: besides all this, I have a maul, firebrands, arrows and death, all good hard weapons, and such as will do execution."

After he had thus furnished his men with armour and arms, he addressed himself to them in such like words as these; "Remember, quoth *He backs all with a speech to them.* he, that I am your rightful king, and that you have taken an oath, and entered into covenant to be true to me and my cause; I may remember this, and shew yourselves stout and valiant men of Mansoul. Remember also the kindness that I have always shewed to you, and that without your petition; I have granted to you external things, wherefore the privileges, grants, immunities, profits and honours wherewith I have endowed you, do call for, at your hands, returns of loyalty, my lion-like men of Mansoul: and when to fit a time to shew it, as when another shall seek to take my dominion over you into their own hands: One word more, and I have done: can we but stand and overcome this one thock or brunt, I doubt not, but in little time, all the

## THE HOLY WAR.

the world will be ours; and when that day comes, my true hearts, I will make you kings, princes and captains, and what brave days we will have then."

Diabolus having thus armed and forenamed his servants and vassals in Mansoul, against their good and lawful King Shaddai; in the next place he doubled his guards at the gates of the town, and he takes him- self to the castle, which was his strong hold: *They of Man- soul shew their loyalty to the giant.* his vassals also, to shew their wills and supposed (but ignoble) gallantry, exercise them- selves in their arms every day, and teach one another feats of war: they also defied their enemies, and sang up the praises of their tyrant; they threatened also what men they would be, if ever things should rise so high as a war between Shaddai and their King.

Now all this time the good King, the King Shaddai, was preparing to send an army, to recover the town of Mansoul again from under the tyranny of their pretended King Diabolus; but he thought good, at first, not to send them by the hand and conduct of brave Emanuel his son, but under the hand of some of his servants, to see first, by them, the temper of Mansoul, and whether, by them, they would be won to the obedience of their King. The army consisted of above forty thousand, all true men; for they came from the King's own court, and were those of his own chusing. *Shaddai prepareth an army for the recovery of Mansoul. The words of God.*

They came up to Mansoul under the conduct of four stout Generals, each man being a captain of ten thousand men, and these are their names and their signs. The name of the first was Boanerges, the name of the second was Captain Conviction, the name of the third was Captain Judgment, and the name of the fourth was Captain Execution; these are the Captains that Shaddai sent to regain Mansoul. *The captain's names.*

These four Captains, as was said, the King thought fit, in the first place, to send to Mansoul to make an attempt upon it; for indeed, generally, in all his wars, he did use to send these four Captains in the van, for they were very stout and rough-hewn men; men that were fit to break



the ice, and to make their way by dint of sword, and their men were like themselves.

To each of these Captains the king gave a banner, that it might be displayed, because of the goodness of his cause, and because of the right that he had to Mansoul, Psal. lx. 4.

First, to Captain Boanerges, for he was the chief; to him, I say, was given ten thousand men; his Ensign was Mr. Thunder, he bare the black colours, and his escutcheon was the three burning thunderbolts, Mark iii. 17.

The second Captain was Captain Conviction, to him was given ten thousand men; his Ensign's name was Mr. Sorrow, he bare the pale colours, and his escutcheon was the book of the law wide open, from whence issued a flame of fire, Deut. xxxiii. 2.

The third Captain was Captain Judgment, to him was given ten thousand men; his Ensign's name was Mr. Terror, he bare the red colours, and his escutcheon was a burning fiery furnace, Mat. xiii. 40. 41.

The fourth Captain was Captain Execution, to him was given ten thousand men; his Ensign was one Mr. Justice, he also bare the red colours, and his escutcheon was a fruitless tree, with an ax lying at the root thereof, Mat. iii. 10.

These four Captains, as I said, had every one of them, under his command, ten thousand men, all of good fidelity to the King, and stout at their military actions.

Well the Captains and their forces, their men and under officers, being had upon a day, by Shaddai, into the field, and their called over by their names, were then and there put into such harness as became their degree, and that service that now they were going about for their King.

Now when the King had mustered his forces (for it is he that mustereth the host to the battle) he gave unto the Captains their several commissions, with charges and commandment, in the audience of all the soldiers, that they should take heed faithfully and courageously to do and execute the same. Their commissions were, for the substance of them, the same in form; though as to name, title, place, and degree of the Captains, there might be some, but very small variation; and here let me give you

you an account of the matter and sum contained in their commission.

A commission from the great Shaddai, king of Mansoul, to his trusty and noble Captain, the Captain Boanerges for his making war upon the town of Mansoul.

○ Thou Boanerges, one of my stout and thundering captains, over one ten thousand of my valiant and faithful servants: Go thou in my name, with this thy force to the miserable town of Man- *Their* soul, Mat. x. 11. and when thou comest thi- *commission.* ther, offer them first conditions of peace, Luke x. 5 and command them, that casting off the yoke and tyranny of the wicked Diabolus, they return to me their rightful prince and lord; command them also, that they cleanse themselves from all that is his in the town of Mansoul, (and look to ~~thyself~~ that thou hast good satisfaction touching the truth of their obedience.) Thus when thou hast commanded them (if they in truth submit thereto) then do thou to the uttermost of thy power, what in thee lies, to set up for me a garrison in the famous town of Mansoul; nor do thou hurt the least native that moveth or breatheth therein, if they will submit themselves to me, but treat thou such as if they were thy friend or brother; for all such I love, and they shall be dear unto me; and tell them, that I will take a time to come unto them, and to let them know that I am merciful. 1 Thess. ii. 7, 8, 9, 10, 11.

But if they shall notwithstanding thy summons, and the producing of thy authority, resist, stand out against thee, and rebel: Then do I command thee to make use of all thy cunning, power, might, and force to bring them under by strength of hand. Farewel.

Thus you see the sum of their commissions, for as I said before, for the substance of them, they were the same that the rest of the noble captains had.

Wherefore they having received each commander his authority, at the hand of their king. The day being appointed, and the place of their rendez- *They pre-* vous prefixed: each commander appeared in *pare for a* such gallantry, as became his cause and calling. *march.* So after a new entertainment from Shaddai, with

with flying colours, they set forward to march towards the famous town of Mansoul. Captain Boanerges led the van; Captain Conviction and Captain Judgment made up the main body; and Captain Execution brought up the rear. They then having a great way to go, (for the town of Mansoul was far off from the court of Shaddai) Eph. ii. 13, 17. they marched through the regions and countries of many people, not hurting, or abusing any, but blessing wherever they came, they also lived upon the King's cost in all the way they went.

Having travelled thus for many days, at last they came within sight of Mansoul; the which when they saw, the captains could for their hearts do no less than for a while bewail the condition of the town; for they quickly saw how that it was prostrate to the will of Diabolus, and to his ways and designs.

Well, to be short, the captains came up before the town, march up to Ear-gate, sit down there (for that was the place of hearing) So when they had pitched their tents, and intrenched themselves, they addressed themselves to make their assault.

*The world are convinced by the well ordered life of the godly.* Now the townsfolk at first, beholding so gallant a company, so bravely accounted, and so excellently disciplined, having on their glittering armour, and displaying of their flying colours: could not but come out of their houses and gaze. But the cunning fox Diabolus, fearing that the people, after this sight, should on a sudden summons, open the gates to the captains,

came down with all haste from the castle, and made them retire into the body of the town, who when he had them there, made this lying and deceivable speech unto them.

*Diabolus alienates their minds from them* 'Gentlemen, quoth he, although you are my trusty and well beloved friends, yet I cannot but (a little) chide you for your late uncircumspect action; in going out to gaze on that great and mighty force, that but yesterday sat down before (and have now intrenched themselves, in order to the maintaining of a siege against) this famous town of Mansoul. Do you know who they are? whence they come! and what is their purpose

*False Satan.* in sitting down before the town of Mansoul? They are they of whom I have told you



you long ago, that they would come to destroy this famous town, and against whom I have been at the cost to arm you with cap a-pee for your body, besides great fortifications for your mind; wherefore then did you not rather, even at the first appearance of them, cry out, fire the beacons, and give the whole town an alarm concerning them, that we might all have been in a posture of defence, and been ready to have received them with the highest acts of defiance, then had you shewed yourselves men to my liking, whereas by what you have done, you have made me half afraid; I say half afraid, that when they and we shall come to push a pike, I shall find you want courage to stand it out any longer, wherefore have I commanded a watch, and that you should double your guards at the gates? wherefore have I endeavoured to make you as hard as iron, and your hearts as a piece of the nether-millstone? was it, think you, that you might shew yourselves women, and that you might go out like a company of innocents to gaze on your mortal foes! fy, fy, put yourselves into a posture of defence, beat up the drum, gather together in warlike manner, that our foes may know that before they shall conquer this corporation, there are valiant men in the town of Mansoul.

I will leave off now to chide, and will not further rebuke you; but I charge you, that hence forwards, you let me see no more such actions. Let not hence forward a man of you, without order first obtained from me, so much as shew his head over the wall of the town of Mansoul: you have now heard me, do as I have commanded, and you shall cause me that I dwell securely with you, and that I take care as for myself, so for your safety and honour also. Farewel.

Now were the townsmen strangely altered; They were as men stricken with a panic fear: they ran to and fro thro' the streets of the town of Mansoul, crying out, help, help, the men that turn the world upside down are come hither also; nor could any

*Satan greatly afraid of God's ministers that they will set Mansoul against him.*

*He stirs them up to bid defiance to the ministers of the word.*

*When sinners hearken to Satan, they are set in a rage against godliness.*

of them be quiet after, but still as men bereft of wit, they cryed out, the destroyers of our peace and people are come: this went down with Diabolus. 'Ayl quoth he to himself, this I like well, now it is as I would have it, now you shew your obedience to your prince; hold you but here, and then let them take the town if they can.'

Well before the King's forces had sat before Mansoul three days, Captain Boanerges commanded his trumpeter to go down to Ear-gate, and there, in the name of the great Shaddai, to summon Mansoul to give audience to the message, that he, in his master's name, was to them commanded to deliver. So the

*The King's  
trumpet  
sounded at  
Ear-gate,*

trumpeter, whose name was Take-heed-what-you-hear, went up, as he was commanded, to Ear-gate, and there sounded his trumpet for a hearing, but there was none that appeared that gave answer or regard, for so had Diabolus commanded. So the trumpeter returned to his Captain and told him what he had done, and also how he had sped: whereat the Captain was grieved, but bid the trumpeter go to his tent.

*They will  
not hear.*

Again Captain Boanerges sends his trumpeter to Ear-gate, to sound as before for an hearing; but they again kept close, came not out, nor would they give him an answer, so observant were they of the command of Diabolus their king.

*A second  
summons re-  
pulsed.*

Then the Captains and other field officers called a council of war, to consider what further was to be done, for the gaining of the town of Mansoul, and after some close and thorough debate upon the contents of their commissions, they concluded yet to give to the town, by the hand of the forenamed trumpeter, another summons to hear; but if that shall be refused, said they, and that the town shall stand it out still, then they determined, and bid the trumpeter tell them so, that they would endeavour, by what means they could, to compel them by force to the obedience of their King. Luke xiv. 23.

*A council of  
war.*

So Captain Boanerges commanded his trumpeter to go up

up to Ear-gate again, and in the name of the great King Shaddai, to give it a very loud summons to come down, without delay, to Ear-gate, there to give audience to the King's most noble Captains. So the trumpeter went, and did as he was commanded: he went up to Ear-gate and sounded his trumpet, and gave a third summons to Mansoul: he said moreover, that if this they should still refuse to do, Isa. viii. 4. the Captains of his Prince would with might, come down upon them, and endeavour to reduce them to their obedience by force.

Then stood up my Lord Willbewill, who was governor of the town (this Willbewill was that apostate of whom mention was made before) and the keeper of the gates of Mansoul. He therefore with big and swelling words, demanded of the trumpeter who he was? whence he came? and what was the cause of his making so hideous a noise at the gate, and speaking such insufferable words against the town of Mansoul?

*Lord Willbewill's speech to the trumpeter.*

*The trumpeter.*

The trumpeter answered 'I am servant to the most noble Captain, Captain Boanerges, General of the forces of the great King Shaddai, against whom both thyself, with the whole town of Mansoul, have rebelled, and lift up the heel; and my master the Captain, had a special message to this town, and to thee as a member thereof; the which of you of Mansoul shall peaceably hear, so; and if not, must take what follows.'

*Willbewill.*

Then said the Lord Willbewill, 'I will carry thy words to my Lord, and will know what he will say.'

*The trumpeter.*

But the trumpeter soon replied, saying; 'Our message is not to the giant Diabolus, but to the miserable town of Mansoul; nor shall we at all regard what answer by him is made, nor yet by any for him. We are sent to this town to recover it from under his cruel tyranny, and to persuade it to submit, as in former times it did, to the most excellent King Shaddai.'

*Willbewill*

Then said the Lord Willbewill, 'I will do your errand to the town.'

*The*



*The trumpeter.*

The trumpeter then replied, 'Sir, do not deceive us, lest, in so doing, you deceive yourselves much more. He added moreover, for we are resolved, if in peaceable manner you do not submit yourselves, then to make a war upon you, and bring you under by force. And of the truth of what I say, this shall be a sign unto you, you shall see the black flag, with its hot burning thunderbolts, set upon the mount to-morrow, as a token of defiance against your prince, and of our resolutions to reduce you to your Lord and rightful King.'

*Trumpeter turns to the camp.*

So the said Lord Willbewill returned from off the wall, and the trumpeter came into the camp. When the trumpeter was come into the camp, the Captains and officers of the mighty King Shaddai came together, to know if he had obtained a hearing, and what was the effect of his errand; so the trumpeter told, saying, 'When I had sounded my trumpet, and had called aloud to the town for a hearing: my Lord Willbewill (the governor of the town) and he that had charge of the gates came up, when he heard me sound, and looking over the wall, he asked me what I was? whence I came?

*Carnal souls make a wrong interpretation of a gospel ministry.*

and what was the cause of my making this noise? So I told him my errand, and by whose authority I brought it. Then, said he, I will tell it to the Governor and to Mansoul; and then I returned to my Lord's.' Then said the brave Boanerges, 'Let us for a while lie still in our trenches, and see what these rebels will do.' Now when the time drew nigh, that audience, by Mansoul, must be given to the brave Boanerges and his companions, it was commanded, that all the men of war, throughout the whole camp of Shaddai, should, as one man, stand to their arms, and make themselves ready, if the town of Mansoul shall hear, to receive it forthwith to mercy; but if not, to force a subjection. So the day being come, the trumpeters sounded, and that throughout the whole camp, that the men might be in readiness for that which then should be the work of the day. But when they that were in the town of Mansoul heard the sound of the trumpets throughout the camp of Shaddai, and thinking

to other, but that it must be in order to storming the corporation; they at first, were put to great consternation of spirit; but after they a little were settled again, they also made what preparations they could for a war, if they did storm, else to secure themselves. Zech. viii. 11.

Well, when the utmost time was come, Boanerges was resolved to hear their answer; wherefore he sent out his trumpeter again, to summon Mansoul to a hearing of the message that they had brought from Shaddai. So he went and sounded, and the townsmen came up, but made Ear-gate as sure as they could. Now when they were come up to the top of the wall, Captain Boanerges desired to see the Lord Mayor, but my Lord Incredulity was then Lord Mayor, for he came in the room of my Lord Lustings. So Incredulity came up and shewed himself over the wall, but when the Captain Boanerges had set his eyes upon him, he cried out aloud, 'This is not he, where is my Lord Understanding, the ancient Lord Mayor of the town of Mansoul, for to him I would deliver my message?'

Then said the giant (for Diabolus was also come down) to the Captain, 'Mr. Captain, you have, by your boldness, given to Mansoul, at least, four summons to subject herself to your King; by whose authority I know not, nor will I dispute that now. I ask therefore what is the reason of all this ado, or what would you be at if you knew yourselves?'

Then Captain Boanerges, whose was the black colours, and whose coutecheon was three burning thunderbolts, (taking no notice of the giant or of his speech) thus addressed himself to the town of Mansoul; 'Be it known unto you, O unhappy and rebellious Mansoul! that the most gracious King, the great King Shaddai, my master, hath sent me unto you with commission (and so he shewed to the town his broad seal) to reduce you to his obedience. And he hath commanded me, in case you yield upon my summons, to carry it to you as if you were my friends or brethren; but he also hath bid,

*Boanerges refuses to make on-credulity a judge of what he had to deliver to the famous town of Mansoul.*

*Boanerges obtained a hearing.*

*His speech.*

that if after summons to submit, you still stand out and rebel, we should endeavour to take you by force.'

Then stood forth Captain Conviction and *Speech of* said, (his was the pale colours, and for an es-  
*Captain* cutcheon he had the book of the law wide  
*Conviction.* open, &c) "Hear, O Mansoul! Thou, O

Mansoul, wast once famous for innocency, but now thou art degenerated into lies and deceit: Rom. iii. 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 23. Chap. xvi. 17, 18. Thou hast heard what my brother the Captain Boanerges hath said, and it is your wisdom, and will be your happiness, to stoop to, and accept of, conditions of peace and mercy when offered, especially when offered by one, against whom thou hast rebelled, and one who is of power to tear thee to pieces, for so is Shaddai our King; nor when he is angry, can any thing stand before him. Psal. l. 21, 22, 'If you say you have not sinned, or acted rebellious against our King, the whole of your doings since the day that you cast off his service (and there was the beginning of your sin) will sufficiently testify against you. What else means your hearkening to the tyrant, and your receiving him for your King? What means else your rejecting the laws of Shaddai, and your obeying of Diabolus? Yea, what means thus your taking up of arms against, and the shutting of your gates upon us the faithful servants of your King? Be ruled then, and accept of my brother's invitation, and overstand not the time of mercy, but agree with thine adversary quickly. Luke xii. 58, 59. Ah Mansoul! suffer not thyself to be kept from mercy, and to be run into a thousand miseries by the flattering wiles of Diabolus: perhaps that piece of deceit may attempt to make you believe that we seek our own profit in this our service, but know, 'tis obedience to our King, and love to your happiness, that is the cause of this undertaking of ours.

"Again, I say to thee, O Mansoul! consider if it be not amazing grace, that Shaddai should so humble himself as he doth, now he, by us, reasons with you, in a way of intreaty and sweet persuasion, that you would subject yourselves to him. Has he that need of you, that we are sure you have of him? No, no, but he is merciful, and will not that Mansoul should die, but turn to him and live." 2 Cor. v. 18, 19, 20, 21.

Then



Then stood forth Captain Judgment, whose *Captain*  
 was the red colours, and for an escutcheon *Judgment*  
 he had the burning fiery furnace; and he said *his speech*  
 "O ye the inhabitants of the town of Man- *to Mansoul.*  
 soul, that have lived so long in rebellion and  
 acts of treason against the King Shaddai; Know that  
 we come not to-day, to this place, in this manner; with  
 our message of our own minds, or to revenge our own  
 quarrel, it is the King, my master, that hath sent us to  
 reduce you to your obedience to him, the which if you  
 refuse in a peaceable way to yield, we have commission to  
 compel you thereto. And never think of yourselves,  
 nor yet suffer the tyrant Diabolus to persuade you to  
 think, that our King, by his power, is not able to bring  
 you down, and to lay you under his feet, for he is the  
 former of all things, and if he touches the mountains  
 they shake. Nor will the gate of the King's clemency  
 stand always open, for the day that shall burn like an o-  
 ven is before him, yea, it hath greatly, it slumbereth  
 not." Mal. iv. 1. 2. Pet. ii. 3.

"O Mansoul! is it little in thine eyes that our King  
 doth offer thee mercy, and that after so many provocati-  
 ons? Yea, he still holdeth out his golden sceptre to thee,  
 and will not suffer his gate to be shut against thee: wilt  
 thou provoke him to do it? If so, consider of what I say,  
 to thee it is opened no more for ever. If thou sayest thou  
 shalt not see him, yet judgment is before him, therefore  
 trust thou in him; Job xxxv. 14. Yea, because there is  
 wrath, beware lest he take thee away with his stroke;  
 then a great ransom cannot deliver thee. Will he esteem  
 thy riches? No, not gold, nor all the forces or strength.  
 Job xxxvi. 19. He hath prepared his throne for judg-  
 ment; Psal. ix. 7, for he will come with fire, and with  
 his chariots like a whirlwind, to render his anger with  
 fury, and his rebukes with flames of fire. Isa. lxvi. 15.  
 Therefore, O Mansoul, take heed, lest after thou hast  
 fulfilled the judgment of the wicked, and judgment should  
 take hold of thee." Now while Captain Judgment was  
 making this oration to the town of Mansoul, it was ob-  
 served by some, that Diabolus trembled; but he pro-  
 ceeded in his parable, and said, "O thou woful town of  
 Mansoul! Wilt thou not yet let open thy gate to receive  
 us, the deputies of thy King, and those that would re-

joice to see thee live? Can thine heart endure, or can thy hands be strong in the day that he shall deal in judgment with thee: Ezek. xxii. 14. I say, canst thou endure to be forced to drink sweet wine, the sea of wrath that our King hath prepared for Diabolus and his angels? Consider, betimes consider.

*The speech  
of Captain  
Execution.*

Then stood forth the fourth Captain, the noble Captain Execution, and said; "O town of Mansoul! once famous, but now like the fruitless bough; once the delight of the high ones, but now a den for Diabolus: Harken also to me, and to the words that I shall speak to thee in the name of the great Shaddai. Behold the ax is laid to the root of the trees, every tree therefore that bringeth not forth good fruit, is hewen down and cast into the fire. Mat. iii. 10.

"O thou town of Mansoul! hast hitherto been this fruitless tree, thou barest nought but thorns and briars. Thy evil fruit sore bespeaks thee not to be a good tree: Thy grapes are grapes of gall, thy clusters are bitter. Deut. xxxii. 32. Thou hast rebelled against thy King and so, we the power and force of Shaddai, are the ax, that is laid to the roots; what sayest thou, wilt thou turn? I say again, tell me before the first blow is given, wilt thou turn? our ax must first be laid to thy root, before it be laid at thy root; it must first be laid to thy root in a way of threatening, before it is laid to thy root by way of execution; and between these two is required thy repentance, and this is all the time that thou hast. What wilt thou do? wilt thou turn? or shall I smite? If I fetch my blow, Mansoul, down you go, for I have commission to lay my ax at, as well as to thy root, nor will any thing, but yielding to our King, prevent doing of execution. What art thou fit for, O Mansoul! if mercy preventeth not, but to be hewn down, and cast into the fire and burned?"

"O Mansoul! patience and forbearance do not act for ever: a year or two, or three, they may; but it thou provoke, by a three years rebellion, and thou hast already done more than this; then what follows, but cut it down, nay, after that thou shalt cut it down. Luke xiii. 9. And dost thou think that these are but threatnings, or that our King has not power to execute his words?"

Mansoul!

Mansoul! thou wilt find that in the words of our King, when they are by sinners made little or light of, there is not only threatening but burning coals. "Thou hast been a cumber-ground long already, and wilt thou continue so still? thy sin has brought this army to thy walls, and shall it bring in judgment to do execution into thy town? Thou hast heard what the Captains have said, but as yet thou shuttest thy gates; speak out Mansoul, wilt thou do so still? or wilt thou accept of conditions of peace?"

These brave speeches of these four noble Captains, the town of Mansoul refused to hear; yet a sound thereof did beat against Ear-gate, though the force thereof could not break it open. In fine, the town desired a time to prepare their answer to these demands. The Captains then told them, "That if they would throw out to them one Ill-pause, that was in the town, that they might reward him according to his works, then they would give them time to consider; but if they would not cast him to them over the wall of Mansoul, then they would give them none, for, said they, we know that so long as Ill-pause draws breath in Mansoul, all good consideration will be confounded, and nothing but mischief will come thereon."

*Mansoul desires time to make answer. Upon what conditions the Captains would give them time.*

Then Diabolus, who was there present, being loth to lose his Ill-pause, because he was his orator, (and yet certainly had, could the Captains have laid their fingers on him) was resolved at this instant to give them answer by himself, but then changing his mind, he commanded the then Lord Mayor, the Lord Incredulity to do it, saying, "My Lord, do you give these runagates an answer, and speak but that Mansoul may hear and understand you."

*Diabolus interrupts them, and sets incredulity to answer them.*

So Incredulity, at Diabolus's command, began and said, "Gentlemen, you have here, as we do behold, to the disturbance of our Prince, and the molestation of the town of Mansoul, camped against it: but from whence you come we will not know; and what you are, we will not believe. Indeed you tell us, in your terrible speech, that you have

*His speech.*



this authority from Shaddai; but by what right he commands you to do it, that we shall yet be ignorant.

"You have also, by the authority aforesaid summoned this town to desert her Lord, and, for protection, to yield up herself to the great Shaddai our King; flatteringly telling her, that if she will do it, he will pass by and not charge her with her past offences."

"Further, you have also, to the terror of the town of Mansoul, threatened, with great and sore destruction, to punish this corporation, if she consents not to do as your wills would have her."

*The true picture of unbelief.* "Now Captains, from whensoever you come and though your designs be never so right, yet know ye, that neither my Lord Diabolus, nor I, his servant Incredulity, nor yet our brave Mansoul, doth regard either your persons, message, or the King that you say hath sent you: his power, his greatness, his vengeance we fear not, nor will we yield at all to your summons."

"As for the war that you threaten to make upon us we must therein defend ourselves as well as we can; and know ye, that we are not without wherewithall to bid defiance to you. And, in short, for I will not be tedious, I tell you that we take you to be some vagabond runagate crew, that having shaken off all obedience to your King, have gotten together in a tumultuous manner, and are ranging from place to place to see, if, through the flatteries you are skilled to make on the one side, and threats wherewith you think to fright on the other, to make some silly town, city, or country to desert their place and leave it to you; but Mansoul is none of them."

"To conclude, we dread you not, we fear you not, nor will we obey your summons; our gates we keep shut upon you; our place we will keep you out of; nor will we long this suffer you to sit down before us. Our people must live in quiet; your appearance doth disturb them wherefore arise, with bag and baggage, and  
§ *Flesh.* begone, or we will let fly from the § walls against you."

This oration, made by old Incredulity, was seconded by desperate Willbewill, in words to this effect, "Gentlemen,

gentlemen. we have heard your demands, and the noise of your threats, and have heard the sound of your summons, but we fear not your force, we regard not your threats, but will still abide as you found us. And we command you, that in three days time you cease to appear in these parts, or you shall know what it is, once to offer to rouse the lion Diabolus, when asleep in his town of Mansoul."

*The speech of the Lord Willbewill.*

The Recorder, whose name was Forget-good, he also added as followeth; "Gentlemen, my Lord, as you see, have, with mild and gentle words, answered your rough and angry speeches; they have moreover, in my hearing, given you leave quietly to depart as you came; wherefore take their kindness and be gone: we might have come out with force upon you, and have caused you to feel the dint of our swords; but as we love ease and quiet ourselves, so we love not to hurt or molest others."

*The speech of Forget-good the recorder.*

Then did the town of Mansoul shout for joy, as if, by Diabolus and his crew some great advantage had been gotten of the Captains. They also rang the bells and made merry, and danced upon the walls.

*The town resolved to withstand the Captains.*

Diabolus also returned to the castle, and the Lord Mayor and Recorder to the place; but the Lord Willbewill took special care that the gates should be secured with double guards, double bolts, and double locks and bars; and that Ear-gate, especially, might the better be looked to, for that was the gate in at which the King's forces sought most to enter, the Lord Willbewill made one old Mr. Prejudice (an angry and ill-conditioned fellow) Captain of the ward at the gate, and put under his power sixty men, called Deaf-men; men advantageous for that service, forasmuch as they muttered no words of the Captains, nor of their soldiers.

*The band of Deaf-men set to keep Ear-gate.*

Now when the Captains saw the answer of the great ones, and that they could not get an hearing from the old natives of the town, and that Mansoul was resolved to give the King's army battle; they prepar-

*The Captains resolve to give them battle.*

ed themselves to receive them, and to try it out by the power of the arm. And first they made their force more formidable against Ear-gate? for they knew, that unless they could penetrate that, no good could be done upon the

*The battle begun.*

town. This done they put the rest of their men in their places; after which they gave out the word, which was, 'Ye must be born again.' Then they sounded the trumpet,

then they in the town made them answer, with shout against shout, charge against charge, and so the battle began. Now they in the town

*The guns planted upon Ear-gate.*

had planted upon the tower over Ear-gate, two great guns, the one called High-mind, and the other Heady. Unto these two guns

they trusted much, they were cast in the castle by Diabolus's founder, whose dame was Mr. Puff-up, and mischievous pieces they were, but so vigilant and watchful, when the Captains saw them, were they, that though sometimes their shot would go by their ears with a whiz yet they did them no harm. By these two guns the townsfolk made no question but greatly to annoy the camp of Shaddai, and well enough to secure the gate, but they had not much cause to boast of what execution they did, as by what follows will be gathered.

The famous Mansoul had also some other small pieces in it, of the which they made use against the camp of Shaddai.

They from the camp also, did as stoutly, and with as much of that as may, in truth, be called valour, let fly as fast at the Town, and at Ear-gate; for they

*The sentence and power of the word.*

saw, that unless they could break open Ear-gate, 'twould be but in vain to batter the wall. Now the king's Captains had brought

with them several slings, and two or three battering rams; with their slings therefore they battered the houses and people of the town, and with their rams they sought to break Ear-gate open.

The camp and the town had several skirmishes and brisk encounters, while the Captains, with their engines, made many brave attempts to break open, or beat down the

tower that was over Ear-gate, and at the said gate to make their entrance; but Mansoul

*The town*

stood



stood it out so lustily, through the rage of Diabolus, the valour of the Lord Willbewill, and the conduct of old Incredulity the mayor, and Mr. Forget good the Recorder; that the charge and expence of that summer's war on the King's side, seemed almost to be quite lost, and the advantage to return to Mansoul; but when the Captains saw how it was, they made a fair retreat, and intrenched themselves in their winter quarters. Now in this war, you must needs think there was much loss on both sides, of which be pleased to accept of this brief account following.

*floutly stands out.*

*The Captains return to their winter quarters.*

*An account of this war with reference to the loss of both sides.*

*Three new soldiers.*

The King's Captains, when they marched from the court to come up against Mansoul to war; as they came crossing over the country, they happened to light upon three young fellows that had a mind to go for soldiers; proper men they were, and men of courage and skill to appearance. Their names were Mr. Tradition, Mr. Human-wisdom, and Mr. Man's-invention. So they came up to the Captains, and proffered their service to Shaddai. The Captains then told them of their design, and bid them not to be rash in their offers; but the young men told them, they had considered the thing before, and that hearing they were upon their march for such a design, came hither on purpose to meet them, that they might be listed under their excellencies. Then Captain Boanerges (for that they were men of courage) listed them into his company, and so away they went to the war.

*They are taken prisoners.*

Now when the war was begun, in one of the briskest skirmishes, so it was, that company of the Lord Willbewill's men sallied out at the falliport, or postern, of the town, and fell in upon the rear of Captain Boanerges's men, where these three fellows happened to be, so they took them prisoners, and away they carried them into the town, where they had not lain long in durance, but it began to be noised about the streets of the town, what three notable prisoners the Lord Willbewill's men had taken, and brought in prisoners out of the camp of Shaddai;

at length tidings thereof was carried to Diabolus to the castle, to wit, what my Lord Willbewill's men had done and whom they had taken prisoners.

*They are brought before Diabolus, and are content to fight under his banner.*

Then Diabolus called for Willbewill, to know the certainty of this matter. So he asked him, and he told him; then did the giant send for the prisoners, who, when they were come, demanded of them who they were, whence they came, and what they did in the camp of Shaddai, and they told him: then he sent them to ward again. Not many days after he sent for them to him again, and then asked them if they would be willing to

serve him against their former Captains; they then told him, that they did not so much live by religion as by the fates of fortune; and that since his Lordship was willing to entertain them, they should be willing to serve him.

*Anything.*

*He therefore sends them to Captain Anything with a letter.*

Now while things were thus in hand, there was one Captain Anything, a great doer in the town of Mansoul, and to this Captain Anything did Diabolus send these men with a note, under his hand, to receive them into his company; the contents of which letter were thus,

"Anything, my darling, the three men that are the bearers of this letter, have a desire to serve me in the war, nor know I better to whose conduct to commit them than to thine; receive them therefore in my name, and as need shall require, make use of them against Shaddai and his men. Farewel." So they came, and he received them, and he made two of them sergeants, but he made M. R. Man's-invention his Ensign bearer. But this much for this, and now to return to the camp.

They of the camp did also some execution upon the town, for they did beat down the roof of the Lord Mayor's house, and so laid him more open than he was before. They had almost with a sling, slain my Lord Willbewill outright, but he made a shift to recover again. But they made a notable slaughter among the

the Aldermen, for with one only shot they  
out of six of them, to wit, Mr. Swearing,  
Mr. Whoring, Mr. Fury, Mr. Stand-to-  
es, Mr. Drunkenness, and Mr. Cheat-

*Six Alder-  
men slain.*

They also dismounted the two guns that  
stood upon the tower over Ear-gate, and  
laid them flat in the dirt. I told you be-

*Guns dis-  
mounted.*

fore, that the King's noble Captains had  
drawn off to their winter quarters, and had there in-  
renched themselves and their carriages, so as with the best  
advantage to their King, and the greatest annoyance to the  
enemy, they might give seasonable and warm alarms to the  
town of Mansoul; and this design of them did so hit, that  
I may say they did almost what they would to the molesta-  
tion of the corporation.

For now could not Mansoul sleep securely  
as before, nor could they now go to their  
debaucheries with that quietness, as in times  
past; for they had from the camp of Shaddai  
such frequent, warm, and terrifying alarms;  
yea, alarms upon alarms, first at one gate and  
then at another; and again at all the gates  
at once, that they were broken as to former  
peace: yea, they had their alarms so fre-

*Continual a-  
larms given  
to Mansoul.*

*The effects  
of convicti-  
ons though  
common if a-  
biding.*

quently, and that when the nights were at  
longest, the weather coldest, and so consequently, the sea-  
son most unseasonable; that that winter was to the town  
of Mansoul a winter by itself. Sometimes the trumpets  
would sound, and sometimes the slings would whirl the  
stones into the town. Sometimes ten thousand of the  
King's soldiers would be running round the wall's of Man-  
soul at midnight, shouting, and lifting up the voice for  
the battle. Sometimes again some of them in the town  
would be wounded, and their cry and lamen-

table voice would be heard, to the great mo-  
lestation of the now languishing town of Man-  
soul: yea so distressed with those that laid  
siege against them, were they, that I dare  
say, Diabolus their King had, in these days, his rest much  
broken.

*The town  
much mo-  
lestated.*

In



*Change of thoughts in Mansoul.* In these days, as I was informed, new thoughts, and thoughts that began to run counter one to another, began to possess the minds of the men of the town of Mansoul. Some would say there is no living thus: others would then reply, this will be over shortly: then would a third stand up and answer, let us turn to the King Shaddai, and so put an end to these troubles; and a fourth would come in with a fear, saying, I doubt he will not receive us. The old gentleman too, the Recorder, that was so before Diabolus took Mansoul; he also began to talk aloud, and his words were now to the town of Mansoul, as if they were great claps of thunder. No noise now so terrible to Mansoul as was his, with the noise of the soldiers, and shoutings of the Captains.

*Conscience speaks.* Also things began to grow scarce in Mansoul; now the things that her soul lusted after were departing from her. Upon all her pleasant things there was a blast, and a burning instead of a beauty. Wrinkles now, and some shews of the shadow of death, were upon the inhabitants of Mansoul. And now, O how glad would Mansoul have been to enjoyed quietness and satisfaction of mind, though joined with the meanest condition in the world. Luke xiv. 14. 15.

*A famine in Mansoul.* The Captains also, in the deep of this winter, did send, by the mouth of Boanerges's trumpeter, a summons to Mansoul, to yield up herself to the King, the great King Shaddai. They sent it once, and twice, and thrice, not knowing but that, at some times, there might be in Mansoul some willingness to surrender up themselves unto them, might they but have the colour of an invitation to do it under. Yea, so far as I could gather, the town had been surrendered up to them before now, had it not been for the opposition of old Incredulity, and the sickleness of the thoughts of my Lord Willbewill. Diabolus also began to rave, wherefore Mansoul, as to yielding, was not yet all of one mind, therefore they still lay distressed under these perplexing fears.

I told

I told you but now, that they of the King's army had, this winter, sent three times to Mansoul, to submit herself.

The first time the trumpeter went, he went with words of peace, telling of them, "That the Captains, the noble Captains of Shaddai, did pity and bewail the misery of the now perishing town of Mansoul: and was troubled to see them so much to stand in the way of their own deliverance. He said moreover, that the Captains bid him tell them, that if now poor Mansoul would humble herself and turn, her former rebellions, and most notorious treasons, should by their merciful King, be forgiven them; yea, and forgotten too. And having bid them beware that they stood not in their own way, that they opposed not themselves, nor made themselves their own losers: he returned again into the camp."

*The contents of the first summons.*

Secondly, The second time the trumpeter went, he did treat him a little more roughly, for after sound of trumpet he told them, "That their contriving in their rebellion did but chase and heat the spirit of the Captains, and that they were resolved to make a conquest of Mansoul, or to lay their bones before the town walls."

*The contents of the second summons.*

Thirdly, He went again the third time, and dealt with them more roughly, telling of them, "That now since they had been so horrible profane, he did not know, nor certainly know, whether the captains were inclined to mercy or judgement; only, said he, they commanded me to give you a summons to open the gates unto them; so he returned, and went into the camp."

*The contents of the third summons.*

These three summonses, and especially the two last, did so distress the town, that they presently called a consultation, the result of which was this, That my Lord Willbewill should go to Ear-gate, and there with sound of trumpet, call to the Captains of the camp for a parley. Well, the Lord Willbewill sounded upon the wall, so the Captains came up in their harness, with their ten thousands at their feet. The townsmen then told the Captains, that they had heard and considered their summons, and

*The town sounds for a parley.*

would come to an agreement with them, and with their King Shaddai, upon such certain terms, articles, and propositions, as with and by the order of their Prince, they to them, were appointed to propound, viz. they would agree upon these grounds to be one people with them.

*Proposition on the first.*

First, "If that those of their own company, as the now Lord Mayor, and their Mr. Forget-good, with their brave Lord Willbewill, might, under Shaddai, be still the governors of the town, castle and gates of Mansoul."

*Proposition on the second.*

Second, "Provided that no man, that now serveth under their great giant Diabolus, be, by Shaddai, cast out of house, habour, or the freedom that he hath hitherto enjoyed in the famous town of Mansoul."

*Proposition on the third.*

Third, "That it shall be granted them, that they of the town of Mansoul shall enjoy certain of their rights and privileges, to wit, such as have formerly been granted them, and that they have long lived in the enjoyment of, under the reign of their King Diabolus, that now is, and long has been, their only Lord and great defender."

*Proposition on the fourth.*

Fourth, "That no new law, officer, or executioner of law or office, shall have any power over them, without their own choice and consent."

"These being our propositions, or conditions of peace, and upon these terms, said they, we will submit to your King."

But when the Captains had heard this weak and feeble offer of the town of Mansoul, and their high and bold demands, they made to them again, by their noble Captain, the Captain Boanerges, this speech following:

*Boanerges's answer.*

"O ye inhabitants of the town of Mansoul, when I heard you trumpet sound for a parley with us, I can truly say I was glad; but when you said you were willing to submit yourselves to our King and Lord, then I was yet more glad; but when by your silly proviso's, and foolish

cavils,



avils, you lay the stumbling block of your iniquity before your own fears : then was my gladness turned into sorrow, and my hopeful beginnings of your return into languishing, fainting fears.

"I count, that old Ill-pause, the ancient enemy of Mansoul, did draw up these proposals that now you present us with, as terms of an agreement ; but they deserve not to be admitted to sound in the ear of any man that pretends to have service for Shaddai. We do therefore jointly, and that with the highest disdain, refuse and reject such things, as the greatest of iniquities," 2 Tim. 2. 19.

"But, O Mansoul, if you will give yourselves into our hands, or rather into the hands of our King ; and will trust him to make such terms with, and for you, as shall seem good in his eyes, (and, I dare say, they shall be such as you shall find to be most profitable to you) then we will receive you ; but if you like not to trust yourselves in the army of Shaddai our King, then things are but where they were before, and we know also what we have to do."

Then cried out old Incredulity the Lord Mayor, and said, "And who, being out of the hands of the enemies, as ye see we are now, will be so foolish as to put the staff out of their own hands into the hands of they knew not who? I, for my part, will never yield to so unlimited a proposition. Do we know the manner and temper of their King? 'Tis said by some, that he will be angry with his subjects, if but the breadth of an hair they chance to step out of the way : and of others, that he requireth of them much more than they can perform. Wherefore it seems, O Mansoul, to be thy wisdom, to take good heed what thou doest in this matter. For if you once yield, you give up yourselves to another, and so you are no more your own. Wherefore, to give up yourselves to an unlimited power, is the greatest folly in the world. For now you indeed may repent, but can never justly complain. But do you indeed know when you are his, which of you he will kill, and which of you he will save alive? or whether he will not cut off every one of us, and send out of his own country

*Old Incredulity's reply.*

*Unbelief never is profitable in talk, but always speaks mischievously.*

country another new people, and cause them to inhabit this town."

*This speech undid all, but it did please the devil.*

This speech of the Lord Mayor undid all, and threw flat to the ground their hopes of an accord: wherefore the Captains returned to their trenches, to their tents, and to their men as they were: and the Mayor to the castle and to his King.

Now Diabolus had waited for his return, for he had heard that they had been at their points: so when he was come into the chamber of state, Diabolus saluted him with, Welcome, my Lord: How went matters betwixt you to day? So the Lord Incredulity, with a low congee, told him the whole of the matter, saying, Thus and thus said the Captain of Shaddai, and thus and thus said I. The which when 'twas told to Diabolus, he was very glad to hear it, and said, "My Lord Mayor, my faithful Incredulity, I have proved thy fidelity above ten times already, but never yet found thee false. I do promise thee, if we rub under this brunt, to prefer thee to a place of honour, a place far better than to be Lord Mayor of Mansoul; I will make thee my universal deputy, and thou shalt, next to me, have all nations under thy hand; yea, and thou shalt lay ties upon them that they may not resist thee, nor shall any of our vassals walk more at liberty, but those that shall be content to walk in thy fetters."

Now came the Lord Mayor out from Diabolus, as if he had obtained a favour indeed; wherefore to his habitation he goes in great state, and thinks to feed himself well enough with hopes, until the time came that his greatness should be enlarged.

But now, though the Lord Mayor and Diabolus did thus well agree, yet this repulse to the brave Captain put Mansoul into a mutiny. For while old Incredulity

*The understanding and conscience begin to re-*

went into his castle to congratulate his Lord Mayor with what had passed, the old Lord Mayor, that was so before Diabolus came to the town, began to wit, my Lord Understanding, and the old Recorder Mr. Conscience, getting intelligence of what had passed at Ear gate, were much concerned

cerned

erned therewith, wherefore they getting  
 some of the town together, began to possess  
 them with the reasonableness of the noble  
 Captains demands, and with the bad conse-  
 quences that would follow upon the speech of  
 old Incredulity, the Lord Mayor: to wit,  
 how little reverence he shewed therein, either to the Cap-  
 tain, or to their King; also, how he implicitly charged  
 them with unfaithfulness and treachery; for what less  
 could they, could be made of his words, when he said,  
 he would not yield to their proposition; and added more-  
 over a supposition, that he would destroy us, when be-  
 fore, he had sent us word that he would shew  
 mercy. The multitude being now posses-  
 sed with the conviction of the evil that old  
 Incredulity had done, began to run together  
 in companies in all places, and in every cor-  
 ner in the streets in Mansoul; and first they began to mut-  
 ter, then to talk openly, and after that they run too and  
 fro, and cried as they run, 'O the brave Captains of Shad-  
 dai! would we were under the government of the Cap-  
 tains, and of Shaddai their King.' When the Lord May-  
 or had intelligence that Mansoul was in an uproar, down  
 he comes to appease the people, and thought to have  
 dashed their heat with the bigness and the shew of his  
 countenance; but when they saw him, they came run-  
 ning upon him, and doubtless, had done him a mischief,  
 had he not betaken himself to a house. However, they  
 strongly assaulted the house where he was, to have pul-  
 led it down about his ears, but the place was too strong,  
 so they failed of that. So he taking some courage, ad-  
 dressed himself out at a window, to the people, in this  
 manner:

"Gentlemen, says Incredulity, what is *Incredulity*  
 the reason that there is here such an uproar *seeks to quiet*  
 to day? *the people.*  
 Then answered my Lord Understanding; *My Lord*  
 It is even because that thou and thy master *Under-*  
 have carried it not rightly, and as you should, *standing*  
 the Captains of Shaddai: for in three *answers*  
 things you are faulty; First, In that you *him..*  
 would not let Mr. Conscience and myself be



at the hearing of your discourse. Secondly, In that you propounded such terms of peace to the Captains, that by no means could be granted, unless they had intended that their Shaddai should have been only a titular prince, and that Mansoul should still have had power, by law, to have lived in all lewdness and vanity before him; and so, by consequence, Diabolus should still here be King in power, and the other only King in name. Thirdly, For that thou didst thyself (after the Captains had shewed us upon what conditions they would have received us to mercy) undo all again with thy unsavory and unseASONABLE, and ungodly speech."

When old Incredulity had heard this speech, *Sin and the soul at odds:* he cried out "Treason, treason. To your arms, to your arms, O ye, the trusty friends of Diabolus in Mansoul."

"Sir, replied Understanding, you may put upon my words what meaning you please; but I am sure that the Captains of such an high Lord as theirs is, deserved a better treatment at their hands."

Then said old incredulity. "This is but little better. But, Sir, quoth he, what I speak, I spake for my Prince, for his government, and the quieting of the people, whom by your unlawful actions, you have this day set to mutiny against us."

Then replied the old Recorder, whose name was Mr. Conscience, and said, "Sir, you ought not thus to resort upon what my Lord Understanding hath said. 'Tis evident enough that he hath spoken the truth, and that you are an enemy to Mansoul, be convinced then of the evil of your fancy and malapert language, and of the grief that you have put the Captains to; yea, and of the damages that you have done to Mansoul thereby. Had you accepted of the conditions, the sound of the trumpet, and the alarm of war had now ceased about the town of Mansoul, but that dreadful sound abides, and your want of wisdom in your speech has been the cause of it."

Then said old Incredulity, "Sir, if I live I will do your errand to Diabolus, and there you shall have answer to your words. Mean while we will seek the good of the town, and not ask counsel of you."

Then

Then replied Understanding, "Sir, your Prince and you are both foreigners to Mansoul, and not the natives thereof. And who can tell, but that when you have brought us into greater straits, when you also shall see that yourselves can be safe by no other means than by flight, you may leave us and shift for yourselves, or set us on fire, and go away in the smook, or by the light of our burning, and so leave us in our ruins."

At this replied Incredulity. "Sir, you forget that you are under a governor, and that you ought to demean yourself like a subject; and know ye, when my Lord the King shall hear of this day's work, he will give you but little thanks for your labour."

Now while these gentlemen were thus in *Men of* their chiding words, down comes from the *arms come* walls and gates of the town, the Lord Will- *down.* bewill, Mr. Prejudice, old Ill-paule, and several of the new made Aldermen and Burgesses, and they asked the reason of the hubbub and tumult; and with that, every man began to tell his own tale, so that nothing could be heard distinctly. Then was a silence commanded, and the old fox, Incredulity began to speak; "My Lord, quoth he, here are a couple of peevish gentlemen that have, as a fruit of their bad dispositions, and as a tear, through the advice of one Mr. Discontent, tumultuously gathered this company against me this day; and also attempted to run the town into acts of rebellion against our prince."

Then stood up all the Diabolians that were *A great* present, and affirmed these things to be *confusion.* true.

Now when they that took part with my Lord Understanding, and with Mr. Conscience, perceived that they were like to come to the worst, for the force and power was on the other side, they came in for their help and relief; so a great company was on both sides. Then they on Incredulity's side, would have had the two old gentlemen presently away to prison, but they on the other side said they should not. Then they began to cry up parties again: the Diabolians cried up old Incredulity, Forget-good, the new Aldermen, and their great one Diabolus; and the other party, they as fast cried up Snaddai, the Captains, his laws, their mercifulness, and applauded *their*

*They fall  
from  
words to  
blows.*

their conditions and ways. Thus the bickerment went a while, at last they passed from words to blows, and now there were knocks on both sides. The good old gentleman, Mr. Conscience, was knock'd down twice by one of the Diabolians, whose name was

Mr. Benumming; and my Lord Understanding had like to have been slain with an harquebuz, but that he that shot, wanted to take his aim aright. Nor did the other side wholly escape, for there was one Mr. Rash head, a Diabolian, that had his brains beaten out by Mr. Mind, the Lord Willbewill's servant; and it made me laugh to see how old Mr. Prejudice was kick'd and tumbled about in the dirt. For though, a while since, he was made Captain of

*A hot  
skirmish.*

a company with the Diabolians, to the hurt and damage of the town, yet now they had got him under their feet; and I'll assure you he had, by some of the Lord Understanding's party, his crown soundly crack'd to boot. Mr. Anything also, he became a brisk man in the broil, but both sides were against him, because he was true to none; yet he had, for his malapertness, one of his

*Harm done  
on both  
sides.*

legs broken, and he that did it wisht it had been his neck. Much harm more was done on both sides, but this must not be forgotten; it was now a wonder to see my Lord Willbewill so indifferent as he was, he did not seem to take one side more than another, only it was perceived, that he smiled to see how old Prejudice was tumbled up and down in the dirt; also when Captain Anything came bawling up before him, he seemed to take but little notice of him.

*The two  
old gen-  
tlemen put  
in prison  
as the au-  
thors of  
this revol-  
ution.*

Now when the uproar was over, Diabolus sends for my Lord Understanding, and Mr. Conscience, and claps them both up in prison, as the ringleaders and managers of this most heavy, riotous rout in Mantoul. So now the town began to be quiet again, and the prisoners were used hardly, yea, he thought to have made them away, but that the present juncture did not serve for that purpose, for that war was in all their gates. But let us again to our story; the Captains, when they were gone back from the

gate



gate, and when they were come into the camp, again called a council of war, to consult what was further for them to do. Now some said let us go up presently and fall upon the town, but the greatest part thought rather better it would be to give them another summons to yield: and the reason why they thought this to be best was, because that so far as could be perceived, the town of Mansoul now was more inclinable than heretofore: and if, said they, while some of them are in a way of inclination, we should, by ruggedness, give them distaste, we may set them further from closing with our summons, than we would be willing they should.

Wherefore to this advice they agreed, and called a trumpeter, put words into his mouth, and gave him his time, and bid him God speed. Well, many hours were not expired, before the trumpeter addressed himself to his journey. Wherefore, coming up to the wall of the town, he steered his course to Ear-gate, and there sounded as he was commanded; when they that were within, came out to see what was the matter, and the trumpeter made them this speech following;

“O hard hearted, and deplorable town of Mansoul! how long wilt thou love thy sinful simplicity, and ye fools delight in their scorning? As yet despise ye the offers of peace and deliverance? As yet will ye refuse the golden offers of Shaddai, and trust to the lies and falsehood of Diabolus? Think you, when Shaddai shall have conquered you, that the remembrance of these your carriages towards him, will yield you peace and comfort; or that, by rusting language, you can make him afraid as a grasshopper? Both he intreat you, for fear of you? Do you think that you are stronger than he? Look to the heavens, and behold, and consider the stars how high are they? Can you stop the sun from running his course, and hinder the moon from giving her light? Can you count the number of the stars, or stay the bottles of heaven? Can you call the waters of the sea and cause them to cover the face of the ground? Can you behold every one that is proud

*The Captains call a council, and consult what to do.*

*The result is, they send another trumpeter to summon the town to yield.*

*The summons itself.*

proud, and abase him, and bind their faces in seeing, but yet these are some of the works of our King, in whose name, this day, we come up unto you, that you may be brought under his authority. In his name therefore I summon you again, to yield up yourselves to his Captains."

*The town at a stand.* At this summons the Mansoul's men seem to be at a stand, and knew not what answer to make; wherefore Diabolus forthwith appeared, and took upon him to do it himself, and thus he begins, but turns his speech to them of Mansoul.

*Diabolus makes a speech to the town, and endeavours to terrify it with the greatness of God.* "Gentlemen, quoth he, and my faithful subjects, if it is true that this summoner hath said, concerning the greatness of their King. Then by his terror you will always be kept in bondage, and so be made to sneak. Yea, can ye now, though he is at a distance, endure to think of such a mighty one? and not to think of him, while at a distance, can you endure to be in his presence? I, your Prince, am familiar with you, and you may play with me as you would with a grasshopper. Consider therefore what is for your profit, and remember the immunities that I have granted you.

"Further, If all be true that this Mansoul hath said, how comes it to pass that the subjects of Shaddai are so slayed in all places where they come? none in the universe so unhappy as they."

"Consider, my Mansoul, would thou wert as loth to leave me as I am loth to leave thee. But consider, I have the ball is yet at thy foot; liberty you have, if you know how to use it; yea, a King you have too, if you can know how to love and obey him."

*He drives Mansoul into despair.* Upon this speech, the town of Mansoul again harden their hearts yet more against the Captains of Shaddai; the thoughts of his greatness did inirely quash them, and the thoughts of his holiness sunk them into despair. Wherefore, after a short consultation, they (of the Diabolian party they were) sent back:

*Mansoul* word by the trumpeter, "That, for this

## THE HOLY WAR.

ts, they were resolved to stick to their *grew worse*  
 ng, but never to yield to Shaddai, so it *and worse.*  
 s but in vain to give them any further  
 mmons, for they had rather die upon the place than  
 ld.' And now things seemed to be gone quite back,  
 d Mansoul to be out of reach or call; yet the Captains,  
 o knew what their Lord would do, would not be beat  
 of heart: they therefore send them another sum-  
 ns, more sharp and severe than the last, but the oftner  
 y were sent to (to be reconciled to Shaddai) the fur-  
 off they were. As they called them, so they went  
 m them, Hos. 11. 2. yea, though they called them to  
 most high.

so they ceased that way to deal with them. *The Cap-*  
 h more, and inclined to think of another *tains leave*  
 y. The Captains therefore did gather *off to sum-*  
 mselves together, to have free conference *mon and*  
 ng themselves, to know what was yet to *betake*  
 done against the town, and to deliver it *themselves*  
 n the tyranny of Diabolus; and one said *to prayer.*  
 r this manner, and another after that;  
 yn stood up the right noble the Captain Conviction, and

h My Brethren, my opinion is this; First, that we  
 y continually play our slings into the town, and keep it in a  
 ntinual alarm, molesting of them day and night: by  
 s doing, we shall stop the growth of their rampant spi-  
 f. For a lion may be tamed by continual molestation."

o Secondly, This done, I advise that, in the next place,  
 u with one consent, draw up a petition to our Lord  
 ddai, by which, after we have shewed our King the  
 dition of Mansoul, and of affairs here, and have beg-  
 his pardon for our no better success, we will earnestly  
 ore his Majesty's help, and that he will please to send  
 ore force and power, and some gallant and well-  
 en commander to head them, that so his majesty may  
 lose the benefit of these his good beginnings, but may  
 pleat his conquest upon the town of Mansoul."

o this speech of the noble Captain Conviction's they  
 ne man, consented; and agreed that a petition should  
 hwith be drawn up, and sent by a fit man away to  
 ddai with speed. The contents of the petition were

"Most



proud, and abase him, and bind their faces in secret? yet these are some of the works of our King, in whose name, this day, we come up unto you, that you may be brought under his authority. In his name therefore I summon you again, to yield up yourselves to his Captains."

*The town at a stand.* At this summons the Mansouliaus seemed to be at a stand, and knew not what answer to make; wherefore Diabolus forthwith appeared, and took upon him to do it himself, and thus he begins, but turns his speech to them of Mansoul.

*Diabolus makes a speech to the town, and endeavours to terrify it with the greatness of God.* "Gentlemen, quoth he, and my faithful subjects. if it is true that this summoner hath said, concerning the greatness of their King; by his terror you will always be kept in bondage, and so be made to sneak. Yea, how can ye now, though he is at a distance, endure to think of such a mighty one? and if not to think of him, while at a distance, how can you endure to be in his presence? I, your Prince, am familiar with you, and you may play with me as you would with a grasshopper. Consider therefore what is for your profit, and remember the immunities that I have granted you.

"Further, If all be true that this Mansoul hath said, how comes it to pass that the subjects of Shaddai are so inflayed in all places where they come? none in the universe so unhappy as they,"

"Consider, my Mansoul, would thou wert as loth to leave me as I am loth to leave thee. But consider, I say, the ball is yet at thy foot; liberty you have, if you know how to use it; yea, a King you have too, if you can tell how to love and obey him."

*He drives Malignoni into despair.*

Upon this speech, the town of Mansoul did again harden their hearts yet more against the Captains of Shaddai; the thoughts of his greatness did inirely quash them, and the thoughts of his holiness sunk them into despair. Wherefore, after a short consultation, they (of the Diabolian party they were) sent back this

*Mansoul*

word by the trumpeter, 'That, for their

parts, the King, but was but summon yield? A and M who kne out of mons, n they wer ther off from the the most So the any mor way. themself among t be done from the after this then stood aid: "My continua continua thus doi rit. For "Sec we, with Shaddai, condition ged his p implore as more spoken c not lose compleat To thi as one m forthwith Shaddai us: parts,

## THE HOLY WAR.

parts, they were resolved to stick to their King, but never to yield to Shaddai, so it was but in vain to give them any further summons, for they had rather die upon the place than yield. And now things seemed to be gone quite back, and Mansoul to be out of reach or call; yet the Captains, who knew what their Lord would do, would not be beat out of heart: they therefore send them another summons, more sharp and severe than the last, but the oftner they were sent to (to be reconciled to Shaddai) the further off they were. As they called them, so they went from them, Hof. 11. 2. yea, though they called them to the most high.

So they ceased that way to deal with them any more, and inclined to think of another way. The Captains therefore did gather themselves together, to have free conference among themselves, to know what was yet to be done against the town, and to deliver it from the tyranny of Diabolus; and one said after this manner, and another after that; then stood up the right noble the Captain Conviction, and said:

“My Brethren, my opinion is this; First, that we continually play our slings into the town, and keep it in a continual alarm, molesting of them day and night: by thus doing, we shall stop the growth of their rampant spirit. For a lion may be tamed by continual molestation.”

“Secondly, This done, I advise that, in the next place, we, with one consent, draw up a petition to our Lord Shaddai, by which, after we have shewed our King the condition of Mansoul, and of affairs here, and have begged his pardon for our no better success, we will earnestly implore his Majesty’s help, and that he will please to send us more force and power, and some gallant and well-spoken commander to head them, that so his majesty may not lose the benefit of these his good beginnings, but may compleat his conquest upon the town of Mansoul.”

To this speech of the noble Captain Conviction’s they all one man, consented; and agreed that a petition should forthwith be drawn up, and sent by a fit man away to Shaddai with speed. The contents of the petition were thus:

“Most

"Most gracious and glorious King, the Lord of the best world, and the builder of the town of Mansoul. We have, dread sovereign, at thy command, put our lives in jeopardy: and at thy bidding, made a war upon the famous town of Mansoul. When we went up against it, we did according to our commission: first, offer conditions of peace unto it, Matt. 22. but they (great King) fought by our counsel, P. ev. i. 25 and would have none of our reproof; Zech. vii. 11, 12, 13. they were for shutting of their gates, and for keeping us out of the town; they also mounted their guns, they sallied out upon us, and have done us what damage they could, but we pursued them with alarm upon alarm, requiting of them with such tribulation as was meet, and have done some execution upon the town.

"Diabolus, Incredulity, and Willbewill, are the great doers against us, now we are in our winter quarters, but so as that we do yet, with an high hand, molest and distress the town.

"Once, as we think, had we had but one substantial friend in the town, such as would but have seconded the sound of our summons as they ought, the people might have yielded themselves; but there were none but enemies there, nor any to speak in behalf of our Lord of the town, wherefore, though we have done as we could, yet Mansoul abides in a state of rebellion against thee.

"Now King of Kings, let it please thee to pardon the unsuccessfulness of thy servants, who have been no more advantageous in so desirable a work, as the conquering of Mansoul is; and send, Lord, as we now desire, more forces to Mansoul, that it may be subdued; and a man to head them, that the town may both love and fear.

"We do not thus speak because we are willing to relinquish the wars (for we are for laying of our bones against the place) but that the town of Mansoul may be won for thy Majesty. We also pray thy Majesty for expedition in this matter, that after their conquest, we may be at liberty to be sent about other of thy gracious designs."

The petition thus drawn up, was sent away with haste to the King, by the hand of the good man, Mr. Love to Mansoul.

When this petition was come to the palace of the King, who should it be delivered to?

*Who carried this petition.*



the King's son; so he took it and read it, because the contents of it pleased him well, mended, and, also in some things, added the petition himself. So after he had made amendments and additions as he thought convenient, with his own hand, he carried it to the King; to whom, when he had, with servance delivered it, he put on authority to speak to it himself.

*To whom it was delivered.*

*The King receives it with gladness.*

Now the King, at the sight of the petition, was glad: but how much more, think you, when it was handed by his son. It pleased him also, to hear that his vassals, that camped against Mansoul, were so hearty in the work, and so steadfast in their resolves; and that they had already got some ground upon the famous town of Mansoul.

Wherefore the King called to him Emanuel his son, who said, here am I, my father. Then said the King, "Thou knowest as I do myself, the condition of the town of Mansoul, and what we have purposed, and what thou hast done to redeem it. Come now, therefore, my son, and prepare thyself for the war, for thou shalt go to my camp at Mansoul; thou shalt also there prosper and prevail, and conquer the town of Mansoul." Then said the King's son, "Thy law is within my heart. I delight to do thy will, 'This is the work that I have longed for, and the work that I have waited for all this while. Grant me therefore what force thou shalt in thy wisdom think meet, and I will go and will deliver from the power of the enemy, and from his power, thy perishing town of Mansoul. My heart has been often vexed within me for the miserable town of Mansoul. But now it is rejoiced, but now 'tis delivered; and with that he leaped over the mountains for joy, saying:

*The King calls his son, and tells him that he shall go to conquer the town of Mansoul, and he is pleased at it. He settles himself in the thoughts of his work.*

"I have not, in my heart, thought any thing too dear for Mansoul, the day of vengeance is in my heart for my Mansoul; and glad am I that thou, my father, hast made me the Captain of their salvation: Heb. ii. 10. And I will now begin to plague all those that have been a

plague to my town of Mansoul, and will deliver it from their hand."

When the King's son had said thus to his father, it presently flew like lightning round about at court: yea, there became the only talk what Emanuel was to go to do for the famous town of Mansoul. But you cannot think how the courtiers too were taken with this design of the Prince: yea, so affected were they with this work, and with the justness of the war, that the highest Lord, and the greatest peer of the Kingdom, did covet to have commissions under Emanuel, to go to help to recover again to Shaddai the miserable town of Mansoul.

Then was it concluded, that some should go and carry tidings to the camp, that Emanuel was to come to recover Mansoul, and that he would bring along with him so mighty, so impregnable a force, that he could not be resisted. But oh, how ready were the high ones at court to run like licquies, to carry these tidings to the camp that was at Mansoul. Now when the Captains perceived that the King would send Emanuel his son, and that it also delighted the son to be sent on this errand, by the great Shaddai his father: they also to shew how they were pleased at the thoughts of his coming, gave a shout that made the earth rent, the sound thereof; yea, the mountains did answer again by echo, and Diabolus himself did totter and shake.

For you must know, that though the town of Mansoul itself was not much, if it all, concerned with the project (for, alas for them, they were woful, befotted) for the chiefly regarded their pleasure and their lusts: yet Diabolus their governor was, for he had his spies, continually abroad, who brought him intelligence of all things, and they told him what was doing at court against his patience and that Emanuel would shortly, and certainly, come with a power to invade his Prince's

*The camp shouts for joy when they hear the tidings.*

the sound thereof; yea, the mountains did answer again by echo, and Diabolus himself did totter and shake.

For you must know, that though the town of Mansoul itself was not much, if it all, concerned with the project (for, alas for them, they were woful, befotted) for the chiefly regarded their pleasure and their lusts: yet Diabolus their governor was, for he had his spies, continually abroad, who brought him intelligence of all things, and they told him what was doing at court against his patience and that Emanuel would shortly, and certainly, come with a power to invade his Prince's

Nor was there any man at court, nor Peer of the Kingdom. But what that Diabolus so feared as he feared this Prince: for if you remember, I showed you before that Diabolus had felt the weight of his hand already, so that since it was he that gold,

was to come, this made him the more afraid. Well, you see how I have told you that the King's son was engaged to come from, the court to save Mansoul, and that his father had made him the Captain of the forces; the time thereof of his setting forth being now expired. he addressed himself for his march, and taketh with him, for his power, five noble Captains and their forces. The first was the famous Captain, the noble Captain Credence, Job. i. 29. his were the red colours, and Mr. Promise bare them; and for an escutcheon, he had the holy lamb and golden shield; Eph. iv. 16. and had ten thousand men at his feet.

The second was that famous Captain, the Captain Good Hope, his were the blue colours; his standard bearer was Mr. Expectation; and for an escutcheon, he had the three golden anchors and had ten thousand men at his feet. Heb. iv. 19.

The third Captain was that valiant Captain, the Captain Charity; his standard bearer was Mr. Pitiful, his were the green colours: and for his escutcheon, he had three naked orphans imbraced in the bosom; 1 Cor. xiii. and he had ten thousand men at his feet.

The fourth was the gallant commander, the Captain Innocent; his standard-bearer was Mr. Harmless, his were the white colours; and for his escutcheon, he had the three golden doves. Mat. x. 16.

The fifth was the truly loyal and well beloved Captain, the Captain Patience; his standard-bearer was Mr. Suffer-long, his were the black colours; and for an escutcheon, he had three arrows through the golden heart.

These were Emanuel's Captains, these their standard beares, their colours and their escutcheons, and these the men under their command. So, as was said, the brave Prince took his march to go to the town of Mansoul. Captain Credence led the van, and Captain

Patience brought up the rear. Heb. iv. 12. So the other three, with their men, made up the main body; the Prince himself riding in his chariot at the head of them.

But when they set out for their march, On how the trumpets sounded, their armour glittered, and how the colours waved in the wind. The Prince's armour was all of gold, and it shone like the sun in the firmament. The



Captain's armour was of proof, and was, in appearance like the glittering stars. There were also some from the court that rode reformades, for the love that they had to the King Shaddai and for the happy deliverance of the town of Mansoul.

Emanuel also when he had thus set forwards to recover the town of Mansoul, took with him, at the commandment of his father, forty four battering rams, and twelve slings with whirl stones withal. Every one of these was made of pure gold, and these they carried with them in the heart and body of their army, all along as they went to Mansoul.

So they marched till they came within less than a league of the town, and there they lay till the four Captains came thither, to acquaint him with matters. Then they took their journey to go to the town of Mansoul, and when Mansoul they came; but when the old soldiers, that were in the camp, saw that they had new forces to join with, they again gave such a shout before the wall of the town of Mansoul, that it put Dibolus into another fright: so they sat down before the town, not now as the other four Captains did to wit, against the gates of Mansoul only but they environ'd it round on every side, and beset it behind and before, so that now Mansoul look which way it will, it saw force and power lie in siege against it; besides there were mounts cast up against it.

The Mount Gracious was on the one side and Mount Justice was on the other side. Further there were several small banks and advance ground, Plain truth hill and No sin banks, where many of the slings were placed against the town. Upon Mount Gracious were planted four, and upon Mount Justice were placed as many; and the rest were conveniently placed in several parts round about the town, five of the best battering rams, that is, of the biggest of them, were placed upon Mount Harken, a mount cast up hard by Ear-gate with intent to break that open.

Now when the men of the town saw the multitude of the soldiers that were come up against the place, and

rams and slings, that the mounts on which they were planted, together with the glittering of the armour, and the waving of their colours they were forced to shift, and again to shift their thoughts; but they hardly changed for thoughts more stout, but rather for thoughts more faint: for though before they thought themselves sufficiently guarded, yet now they began to think that no man knew what would be their hap or lot.

*The heart of  
Mansoul be-  
gins to fail.*

When the good Prince Emanuel had thus beleaguered Mansoul; in the first place he hangs out the white flag, which he caused to be set up among the golden slings that were planted upon Mount Gracious. And this he did for two reasons: First, to give notice to Mansoul that he could, and would yet be gracious, if they turned to him. Secondly, and that he might leave them the more without excuse, should he destroy them, they continuing in their rebellion.

*The white  
flag hung  
out.*

So the white flag, with the three golden doves in it, was hanged out for two days together, to give them time and space to consider; but they, as was hinted before, as if they were unconcerned, made no reply to the favourable signal of the Prince.

Then he commanded, and they set the red flag upon that Mount called Mount Justice. It was the red flag of Captain Judgment, whose escutcheon was the burning fiery furnace. And this also stood waving before them in the wind for several days together. But look, how they carried it under the white flag when that hanged out, so did they also when the red one was, and yet he took no advantage of them.

*The red flag  
hung out.*

Then he commanded again that his servants would hang out the black flag of defiance against them, whose escutcheon was the three burning thunderbolts. But as unconcerned was Mansoul at this, as at those that went before. But when the Prince saw that neither mercy nor judgment, or execution of judgment, would or could come near the heart of Mansoul he was touched with much compunction, and said, 'Surely this strange carriage of the town of Mansoul doth rather arise

*The black  
flag hung  
out.*

from ignorance of the manner, and fears of war, than from a secret defiance of us, and abhorrence of their own lives;

*Christ makes  
not war as  
the world  
does.*

if they know the manner of the war of their own, yet not the rites and ceremonies of the wars in which we are concerned, when I make wars upon mine enemy Diabolus.

Therefore he sent to the town of Mansoul, to let them know what he meant by those signs and ceremonies of the flag, and also to know of them which of

*He sends to  
know if they  
would have  
mercy or  
justice.*

the things they will chuse, whether grace and mercy or judgment, and the execution of judgment: all this while they kept their gates shut with locks, bolts and bars as fast as they could. Their guards also were doubled, and their watch made as

strong as they could. Diabolus also did pluck up what heart he could, to encourage the town to make resistance.

The townsmen also made answer to the Prince's messenger, in substance, according to that which follows.

*The towns  
folk's answer.*

"Great Sir, as to what by your messenger you have signified to us, whether we will accept of your mercy or fall by your justice, we are bound by the law and cus-

tom of this place, and can give you no positive answer for it is against the law, government, and prerogative royal of our King, to make either peace or war without him. But this we will do, we will petition that our Prince will come down to the wall, and there give you such treatment as he shall think fit and profitable for us."

*Emanuel  
grieved at the  
folly of Man-  
soul.*

When the good Prince Emanuel heard this answer, and saw the slavery and bondage of the people, and how much contented they were to abide in the chains of the tyrant Diabolus, it grieved him at the heart, and indeed, when at any time he perceived

that any were contented under the slavery of the giant he would be affected with it.

But to return again to our purpose; after the town had carried this news to Diabolus, and had told him moreover



that the Prince that lay in the leaguer, without the wall, waited upon them for an answer; *Diabolus* he refused, and huffed as well as he could, *afraid.* but in heart was afraid.

Then said he, I will go down to the gates myself, and give him such an answer as I think fit: so he went down to Mouth-gate, and there addressed himself to speak to Emanuel, but in such language as the town understood not, the contents whereof were as follow:

"O thou great Emanuel, Lord of all the world, I know thee, that thou art the son of the great Shaddai? Wherefore art thou come to torment me, and to cast me out of my possession? This town of Mansoul, as thou very well knowest, is mine, and that by a twofold right. 1. It is mine by right of conquest, I won it in the open field; and shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive be delivered? 2. This town of Mansoul is mine also by their subjection: they have opened the gates of their town unto me; they have sworn fidelity to me, and have openly chosen me to be their King: they have also given their castle into my hands; yea they have put the whole strength of Mansoul under me. *His speech to the Prince.*

"Moreover, this town of Mansoul hath disavowed thee; yea, they have cast thy law, thy name, thy image, and all that is thine, behind their backs, and have accepted, and set up in their room, my law, my name, mine image, and all that ever is mine: ask else thy Captains, and they will tell thee that Mansoul hath, in answer to all their summons, shewn love and loyalty to me; but always disdain, despite, contempt and scorn to thee and thine: now thou art the just one, and the holy, and should'st do no iniquity; depart then, I pray thee, therefore from me, and leave me to my just inheritance peaceably." *Heart.*

This oration was made in the language of Diabolus himself. For although he can, to every man, speak in their own language (else he could not tempt them all as he does) yet he has a language proper to himself, and it is the language of the internal cave or black pit.

Wherefore the town of Mansoul (poor hearts) understood

stood him not, nor did they see how he crouched and cringed while he stood before Emanuel their Prince.

Yea, they all this while took him to be one of that power and force, that by no means could be resisted: wherefore while he was thus intreating that he might have you his residence there, and that Emanuel would not yet take it from him by force, the inhabitants boasted even of his valour, saying, Who is able to make war with him?

Well when this pretended King had made an end of what he would say, Emanuel, the golden Prince stood up and spake: the contents of whose words follow:

"Thou deceiving one, said he, I have, in my father's name, in mine own name, and on the behalf and for the good of this wretched town of Mansoul, somewhat to say unto thee. Thou pretendest a right, a lawful right, to the deplorable town of Mansoul, when it is most apparent to all my father's court, that the entrance which thou hast obtained in at the gates of Mansoul, was through thy lie and falsehood; thou beliefst my father, thou beliefst his law, and so deceivest the people of Mansoul. Thou pretendest that the people have accepted thee for their King, their Captain, and right Liege Lord; but that also was by the exercise of deceit and guile. Now if lying willingness, sinful craft, and all manner of hypocrisy will go in my father's court (in which court thou must be tried) for equity and right, then will I confess unto thee that thou hast made a lawful conquest. But alas! what thief, what tyrant, what devil is there that may not conquer after this sort? but I can make it appear, O Diabolus, that thou, in all thy pretences to a conquest of Mansoul, hast nothing of truth to say. Thinkest thou this to be right, that thou didst put the lie upon my father, and madest him (to Mansoul) the greatest deluder in the world? and what sayest thou to thy perverting, knowingly, the right purport and intent of the law? was it good, also, that thou madest a prey of the innocency and simplicity of the now miserable town of Mansoul! Yea, thou didst overcome Mansoul, by promising to them happiness in their transgressions against my father's law, when thou knowest, and couldst not but know, hadst thou consulted nothing but thine own experience, that that was the way to undo them. Thou hast also thyself, O thou master of enmity of spite, defaced my father's image in Mansoul, and set up

up thy own in its place, to the great contempt of my father, the heightning of thy sin, and to the intolerable damage of the perishing town of Mansoul.

"Thou hast moreover, as if all these were but little things with thee, not only deluded and undone this place, but thy lies, and fraudulent carriage, hast set them against their own deliverance. How hast thou stirred them up against my father's Captains, and made them to fight against those that were sent of him to deliver them from their bondage? All these things, and very many more, thou hast done against thy light, and in contempt of my father, and of his law; yea, and with a design to bring under his displeasure, for ever, the miserable town of Mansoul. I am therefore come to avenge the wrong that thou hast done to my father, and to deal with thee for the blasphemies wherewith thou hast made poor Mansoul blaspheme his name. Yea, upon thy head, thou Prince of the infernal cave, will I requite it.

"As for myself, O Diabolus, I am come against thee by lawful power, and to take, by strength of hand, this town of Mansoul out of thy burning fingers. For this town of Mansoul is mine, O Diabolus, and that by undoubted right, as all shall see, that will diligently search the most ancient and most authentic records, and I will plead my title to it, to the confusion of thy face.

"First, for the town of Mansoul, my father hath built and did fashion it with his hand. The palace also that is in the midst of that town, he built it for his own delight. This town of Mansoul therefore is my fathers', and that by the best of titles; and he that gainsays the truth of this, must lie against his soul.

"Secondly, O thou master of the lie, this town of Mansoul is mine.

1. "For that I am my father's heir, Heb. vi. 2. his first born, and the only delight of his heart, John xvi. 5. I am therefore come up against thee in mine own right, even to recover mine own inheritance, out of thine hand.

2. "But further, as I have a right and title to Mansoul, as being my father's heir, so I have also, by my father's donation. His it was, and he gave it me; John vii. nor have I, at any time, offended my father, that he should take it from me and give it to thee. Nor have I been



I been forced, by playing the bankrupt, to tell, or set to sale, to thee, my beloved town of Mansoul, Isa. l. 1. Mansoul is my desire, my delight, and the joy of my heart. But,

3. "Mansoul is mine by right of purchase, I have bought it, O Diabolus, I have bought it to myself. Now since it was my father's and mine, as I was his heir; and since also I have made it mine, by virtue of a great purchase, it followeth, that, by all lawful right, the town of Mansoul is mine, and that thou art an usurper, a tyrant, and traitor, in thy holding possession thereof. Now the cause of my purchasing it was this; Mansoul had trespassed against my father: now my father had said, that in the day that they broke his law, they should die. Now it is more possible for heaven and earth to pass away, than for my father to break his word, Mat. v. 8. Wherefore, when Mansoul had sinned indeed, by a hearkening to thy lie, I put in and became a surety to my father,

*O sweet  
Prince  
Emanuel.*

body for body, and soul for soul, that would make amends for Mansoul's transgressions. and my father did accept thereof. So when the time appointed was come, I gave body for body, soul for soul, life for life, blood for blood, and so redeemed my beloved Mansoul.

4. "Nor did I do this to the halves, my father's law and justice, that were both concerned in the threatening upon transgression, are both now satisfied, and very well content, and that Mansoul should be delivered.

5. "Nor am I come out this day against thee, but by commandment of my father, 'twas he that said unto me Go down and deliver Mansoul.

"Wherefore be it known into thee, O thou fountain of deceit, and be it also known to the foolish town of Mansoul, that I am not come against thee this day without my father.

"And now, said the golden-headed Prince, I have said word to the town of Mansoul," but so soon as mention was made, that he had a word to speak to the besotted town of Mansoul, the gates were double guarded, and men commanded not to give him audience, so he proceeded, and said: "O unhappy town of Mansoul, I cannot but be touched with pity and compassion for thee. Thou

thou hast accepted of Diabolus for thy King, and art become a horse and a minister of Diabolus against thy sovereign Lord. Thy gates thou hast opened to him, but hast shut them fast against me: thou hast given him a hearing, but hast stopt thine ears at my cry; he brought to thee thy destruction, and thou didst receive both him and it: I am come to thee bringing salvation, but thou regardest me not. Besides, thou hast, as with sacrilegious hands, taken thyself with all that was mine in thee, and hast given all to my foe, and to the greatest enemy my father has. You have bowed and subjected yourselves to him, you have vowed and sworn yourselves to be his. Poor Mansoul! What shall I do unto thee; Shall I save thee? Shall I destroy thee? What shall I do unto thee? Shall I fall upon thee, and grind thee to powder, or make thee a monument of richest grace? What shall I do unto thee? Hearken therefore, thou town of Mansoul, hearken therefore to my word, and thou shalt live; I am merciful, Mansoul, and thou shalt find me so; shut me not out of thy gates, Cant. v. 2.

"O Mansoul, neither is my commission, nor inclination all to do thee hurt; John xii. 47. Luke ix. 36 why dost thou so fast from thy friend, and stickest so close to thine enemy? Indeed I would have thee, because it becomes thee to be sorry for thy sin: but do not despair of life, this great force is not to hurt thee, but to deliver thee from thy bondage, and to reduce thee to thy obedience.

"My commission indeed is, to make war upon Diabolus thy king, and upon all Diabolians with him; for he is the strong man, armed, that keeps thy house, and I will have him out; his spoils I must divide, his armour I must take from him, his hold I will cast him out of, and will make it an habitation for myself. And this, O Mansoul, shall Diabolus know, when he shall be made to follow me in chains, and when Mansoul shall rejoice to see so.

"I could, would I now put forth my might, cause that forthwith he should leave you, and depart; but I have it in mine heart so to deal with him, as that the alliance of the war, that I shall make upon him, may be

be seen and acknowledged by all. He hath taken Mansoul by fraud, and keeps it by violence and deceit, and I will make him bare and naked in all the eyes of all observers.

"All my words are true, I am mighty to save, and will deliver my Mansoul out of his hand." This speech was intended chiefly for Mansoul, but Mansoul would not have the hearing of it. They shut up Ear-gate, they barricaded it up, they set a guard thereat, and commanded that no Mansolonian should go out to him, nor that any from the camp should be admitted into the town; all this they did, so horribly had Diabolus enchanted them to do, and seek to do for him, against their rightful Lord and Prince; wherefore no man, nor voice, nor sound of man, that belonged to the glorious host, was come into the town.

So when Emanuel saw that Mansoul was thus involved in sin, he calls his army together, since now all his words were despised, and gave out a commandment throughout all his host, to be ready against the time appointed. Now forasmuch as there was no way lawfully to take the town of Mansoul, but to get in by the gates, and at Ear-gate as the chief; therefore he commanded his Captains and commanders to bring their rams, their slings, and their men, and place them at Eye-gate and Ear-gate, in order to his taking the town.

When Emanuel had put all things in readiness to bid Diabolus battle, he sent again to know of the town of Mansoul, if in peaceable manner they would yield themselves; or whether they were yet resolved to put him to try the utmost extremity: they then, together with Diabolus their King, called a council of war and resolved upon certain propositions that should be offered to Emanuel, if he would accept thereof, so they agreed; and then the next was, who should be sent on this errand. Now there was in the town of Mansoul, a Diabolian and his name was Mr. Loth-loop, a stiff man in his way, and a great doer for Diabolus.



Jesus; him therefore they sent, and put into his mouth what he should say. So he went and came to the camp of Emanuel, and when he was come, a time was appointed to give him audience. So at the time he came, and after a Diabolian ceremony or two, Tit. i. 16. he thus began, and said, "Great Sir, that it may be known unto all men, how good natured a Prince my master is, he hath sent me to tell your Lordship, that he is very willing, rather than to go to war, to deliver *Mark this* into your hands, one half of the town of Mansoul; I am therefore to know if your mightiness will accept of this proposition."

Then said Emanuel, "The whole is mine by gift and purchase, wherefore I will never loose one half."

Then said Mr. Loth-to-sloop, "Sir, my master hath said, that he will be content that you shall be the nominal titular Lord of all, Luke xiii. *Mark this* if he must possess but a part."

Then Emanuel answered, "The whole is mine really, not in name and word only: wherefore I will be the sole Lord and professor of all or of none at all, of Mansoul."

Then Mr. Loth-to-sloop said again, "Sir, behold the condescension of my master! He *Mark this* says that he will be content, if he may but have assigned to him some place of Mansoul, as a place to live privately in, and you shall be lord of the rest," Acts i. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.

Then said the golden Prince, "All that my father giveth me shall come to me; and of all that he hath given me I will lose nothing, no, not a hoof, nor a hair, I will not therefore grant him, no, not the least corner in Mansoul to dwell in, I will have all to myself."

Then Loth-to-sloop said again, "But Sir, suppose that my Lord should resign the whole town to you, only with this proviso, that he sometimes when he comes into this country, may, for old acquaintance *Mark this* take, be entertained as a way-faring man two days, or ten days, or a month, or so, for may not this small matter be granted?"

Then said Emanuel, "No, he came as a way-faring man to David, nor did he stay long with him, and yet it had like to have cost David his soul, 2 Sam, xii. 1, 2, 3.

4, 5. I will not consent that he should have any harbours more there."

Then said Mr. Loth-to-sloop, "Sir, you seem to be very hard. Suppose my master should yield to all that your Lordship hath said, provided that his *Sins and* friends and kindred, in Mansoul, may have *earnal lusts.* liberty to trade in the town, and to enjoy their present dwellings, may not that be granted, Sir?"

Then said Emanuel, "No, that is contrary to my Father's will; for all, and all manner of Diabolians that now are, or that at any time, shall be found in Mansoul, shall not only lose their lands and liberties, but also their lives, Rom. vi. 13. Col. iii. 3. 5. Gal. v. 24.

Then said Mr. Loth-to-sloop again, "But Sir, may not my master and great Lord, by *Mark this.* ters, by passenger, by accidental opportunities, and the like, maintain, if he shall deliver up all unto thee, some kind of old friendship with Mansoul." John x. 8.

Emanuel answered, "No, by no means; forasmuch as any such fellowship, friendship, intimacy or acquaintance in that way, sort or mode, soever maintained, will tend to the corrupting of Mansoul, the alienating of their affections from me, and the endangering of their peace with my Father."

Mr. Loth-to-sloop yet added further, saying, "But great Sir, since my master hath many friends, and those that are dear to him in Mansoul, may he not, if he shall depart from them, even of his bounty and good nature bestow upon them, as he sees fit, some tokens of his love and kindness that he had for them, to the end that Mansoul, when he is gone, may look upon such tokens of kindness once received from their old friend, and remember him who was once their King, and thus

*Mark this.* merry times that they sometimes enjoyed once with another, while he and they lived in peace together," Rom. vi. 12, 13.

Then said Emanuel, "No, for if Mansoul come to be mine, I shall not admit of, nor consent that there should be the least scrap, shred, or dust of Diabolus left behind as tokens or gifts bestowed upon any in Mansoul, thereby

call to remembrance the horrible communion that was betwixt them and him."

"Well Sir. (said Mr. Loth to stoop,) I have one thing more to propound, and then I am got to the end of my commission: suppose that when my master is gone from Mansoul, any that yet shall live *Mark this.* in the town, shouldst have such business of high concerns to do, that if they be neglected, the party shall be undone; and suppose, Sir, that no body can help in that case, so well as my master and lord, may not now my master be sent for upon so urgent an occasion as this? Or if he be not admitted into the town, may not he, and the person concerned, meet in some of the villages near Mansoul, and there lay their heads together, and there consult of matters?" 2 Kings i. 3, 6, 7.

This was the last of those ensnaring propositions that Mr. Loth-to-stoop had propounded to Emanuel, on behalf of his master Diabolus; but Emanuel would not grant it, for he said, "There can be no case, or thing, or matter fall out in Mansoul when thy master shall be gone, that may not be salved by my Father; besides, it will be a great disparagement to my Father's wisdom and skill, to admit any from Mansoul 1 Sam. xviii. 15, to go out to Diabolus for advice, when they are bid before, in every thing by prayer, and supplication, to let their requests be made known to my Father, 2 Kings i. 2, 3. Further, this should it be granted, would be to grant that a door should be set open for Diabolus, and the Diabolians in Mansoul, to hatch and plot and bring to pass treasonable designs, to the grief of my Father and me, and to the utter destruction of Mansoul."

When Mr. Loth-to-stoop had heard this answer, he took his leave of Emanuel, and *Loth to-* departed, saying, "That he would do word to *stoop dis-* his master concerning the whole affair. So *parts.* he departed and came to Diabolus to Mansoul, and told him the whole of the matter, and how Emanuel would not admit, no not by any means that he, when he was once gone out, should forever have any thing more to do, either in, or with any thing that are of the town of Mansoul. When Mansoul and Diabolus had heard this relation of things, they with one consent, concluded to use their best endeavour to keep Emanuel out of Mansoul,



and sent old Ill-pause, of whom you have heard of before, to tell the Prince and his Captains so, So the old gentleman came up to the top of Ear-gate, and called to the camp for a hearing; who when they gave audience, he said, I

*A speech of old Ill-pause to the camp.* have in commandment from my high Lord to bid you tell it to your Prince Emanuel, "That Mansoul and their King are resolved to stand and fall together, and that it is vain for your Prince to think of ever having of Mansoul in his hand, unless he can take by force." So some went and told Emanuel what old Ill-pause, a Diabolian had said. Then said the Prince, "I must try the power of my sword, Eph. vi. 17. for I will not

*They must fight.* (for all the rebellions and repulses that Mansoul has made against me) raise my siege and depart, but will assuredly take my Mansoul and deliver it from the hand of her enemy."

*Preparations to the battle.* And with that he gave out a commandment that Captain Boanerges, Captain Conviction, Captain Judgment, and Captain Execution

should forthwith march up to Ear-gate, with trumpets sounding, colours flying, and with shouting battle. Also he would that Captain Credence should join himself with them. Emanuel moreover gave order that Captain Goodhope, and Captain Charity should draw themselves up before Eye-gate. He bid also, that the rest of his Captains and their men, should place themselves, for the best of their advantage against the enemy, round about the town, and all was done as he had commanded. Then he bid that the word should be given forth, and the word was at that time, *Emanuel*. Then was an alarm sounded, and the battering rams were played, and the slings did whirl stones into the town amain, and thus the battle began. Now Diabolus himself did manage the townsmen in the war, and that at every gate; wherefore their resistance was the more forcible, hellish, and offensive to Emanuel. Thus was the good Prince engaged and entertained by Diabolus and Mansoul for several days together. And it is not worth seeing it was to behold, how the Captains of Shaddai behaved themselves in this war.

And first for Captain Boanerges, (not to undervalue the rest) he made three most fierce assaults,

ults, one after another, upon Ear-gate, *plays the*  
the shaking of the posts thereof, Captain *man,*  
conviction he also made up as fast with Bo-  
erges at possibly he could, and both discerning that the  
ate began to yield, they commanded that the rams should  
be played against it. Now Captain Con-  
viction going up very near to the gate, was *Conviction*  
with great force driven back, and received *wounded.*  
three wounds in the mouth. And those that  
de reformades they went about to encour. *Angels.*  
the Captains.

For the valour of the two Captains made mention of  
fore, the Prince sent for them to his pavilion, and com-  
manded that a while they should rest themselves, and that  
somewhat they should be refreshed. Care also was  
ken for Captain Conviction, that he should be healed of  
his wounds; the Prince also gave to each of them a chain  
of gold, and bid them yet be of good courage.  
Nor did Captain Good-hope, nor Captain  
Charity come behind, in this most desperate  
ht, for they did so well behave themselves  
Eye-gate, that they had almost broken it  
quite open. These also had a reward from  
their Prince, as also had the rest of the Cap-  
tains, because they did valiantly round about  
the town.

In this engagement, several of the officers of Diabolus  
were slain, and some of the townsmen wound-  
ed. For of the officers there was one Cap- *Captain*  
tain Boasting slain. This Boasting thought *Boasting*  
that nobody could have shaken the posts of *slain.*  
Ear-gate, nor have shaken the heart of Dia-  
bolus. Next to him there was one Captain Secure slain:  
his Secure used to say, That the blind and  
come in Mansoul 2 Sam. 5. 6: were able to *Captain*  
keep the gates of the town against Ema- *Secure*  
nel's army. This Captain Secure did Con- *slain.*  
viction cleave down the head with a two  
handed sword, when he received himself three wounds in  
his mouth.

Besides these, there was one Captain Brag-  
gan, a very desperate fellow, and he was

*Captain*  
*Captain*

*Bragman slain.*

Captain over a band of those that threw fire-brands, arrows and death: he also received by the hand of Captain Good-hope, at Eye-gate, a mortal wound in the breast.

There was moreover, one Mr. Feeling but he was no Captain, but a great stickler to encourage Mansoul to rebellion, he received a wound in the eye by the hand of one Boanerges's soldiers, and had by the Captain himself been slain, but that he made a sudden retreat.

But I never saw Willbewill so daunted in all my life, he was not able to do as he was wont, and some say that he also received a wound in the leg, and that some of the men in the Prince's army, have certainly seen him limp, as he afterwards walked on the wall.

*Many of the soldiers in Mansoul slain.*

I shall not give you a particular account of the names of the soldiers that were slain in the town, for they were maimed and wounded, and slain; for when they saw that the posts of Ear-gate did shake, and Eye-gate was well nigh broken quite open; and also that their Captains were slain; this took away the hearts of many of the Diabolians, they fell also by the force of the shot that were sent by the golden slings into the midst of the town of Mansoul.

*Love no-good wounded.*

Of the townsmen there was one Love no-good, he was a townsman, but a Diabolian, he also received his mortal wound in Mansoul, but he died not very soon.

Mr. Ill-pause also, who was the man that came along with Diabolus, when at first he attempted the taking of Mansoul, he also received a grievous wound in the head, some say that his brain-pan was cracked; this I have taken notice of, that he was never, after this, able to do that mischief to Mansoul, as he had done in times past. Also old Prejudice and Mr. Anything fled.

*The white flag hung*

Now when the battle was over, the Prince commanded that yet once more the white flag should be set upon mount Gracious, in sight of

the town  
annel  
Mansoul  
Whe

out ag  
him bu  
another  
would  
promis  
gate, o  
down,  
sently  
him,

"Fo  
by thy  
van to  
acquain  
thereof,  
mit.

"I-  
liness p  
war up  
Well, o  
Mansoul

"Fir  
ility ag  
come th  
ly been  
the tow  
larly,

1. "Thee for  
will do  
derstand

2. "that tra

3. "mult cor

4. "ion acco

5. "myself



the town of Mansoul, to shew that yet Emmanuel had grace for the wretched town of Mansoul.

*out again.*

When Diabolus saw the white flag hanged out again, and knowing that it was not for him but Mansoul, he cast in his mind to play another prank, to wit, to see if Emanuel would raise his siege, and be gone upon a promise of a reformation. So he comes down to the gate one evening, a good while after the sun was gone down, and calls to speak with Emanuel, who presently came down to the gate, and Diabolus saith unto him,

*Diabolus's  
new  
pranks.*

“Forasmuch as thou makest it appear by thy white flag, that thou art wholly given to peace and quiet; I thought meet to acquaint thee, that we are ready to accept thereof, upon terms which thou mayest admit.

*His speech  
to Ema-  
nuel.*

“I know that thou art given to devotion, and that holiness pleases thee; yea, that thy great end in making a war upon Mansoul is, that it may be an holy habitation. Well, draw off thy forces from the town, and I will bend Mansoul to thy bow.

“First, I will lay down all acts of hostility against thee, and will be willing to become thy deputy, and will, as I have formerly been against thee, now serve thee in the town of Mansoul. And more particularly,

*Diabolus  
would be  
Emanuel's  
deputy, and  
he would*

1. “I will persuade Mansoul to receive thee for their Lord, and I know that they will do it the sooner, when they shall understand that I am thy deputy.

*turn refo-  
mer.*

2. “I will shew them wherein they have erred, and that transgression stands in the way to life.

3. “I will shew them the holy law unto which they must conform, even that which they have broken.

4. “I will press upon them the necessity of a reformation according to thy law.

5. “And moreover, that none of these things may fail, myself, at my own proper cost and charge, will set up, and

and maintain, a sufficient Ministry; besides lectures in Mansoul.

6. "Thou shalt receive, as a token of our subjection to thee continually, year by year, what thou shalt think fit to lay and levy upon us, in token of our subjection to thee."

*The answer.* Then said Emanuel to him, "O full of deceit, how moveable are thy ways! how often hast thou changed and rechanged, if so be thou mightest still keep possession of my Mansoul, though as has been plainly declared before, I am the right heir thereof: often hast thou made thy proposals already, nor is this last a whit better than they. And failing to deceive, when thou showest thyself in thy back, thou hast now transformed thyself into an angel of light, 2 Cor. ix. 14. and wouldest, to deceive, be now as a minister of righteousness."

*Diabolus has no conscience to God nor love to Mansoul.* "But know now, O Diabolus that nothing must be regarded that thou canst propound, for nothing is done by thee but to deceive; thou neither hast conscience to God, nor love to the town of Mansoul; whence then should these

thy sayings arise, but from sinful craft and deceit? He that can, of list, and will propound of what he pleases, and that wherewith he may destroy them that believe him is to be abandoned with all that he shall say. But if righteousness be such a beauty-spot in thine eyes now, how is it that wickedness was so closely struck to by thee before? But this is by the bye.

"Thou talkest not of a reformation in Mansoul, and that thou thyself, if I will please, will be at the head of that reformation, all the while knowing, that the greatest proficiency that man can make in the law, and the righteousness thereof, will amount to no more for the taking away of the curse from Mansoul, than just nothing at all for a law being broken by Mansoul, that had before upon a supposition of the breach thereof, a curse pronounced

*He knows that that will do no* against him for it of God, can never by his obeying of the law, deliver himself therefrom (to say nothing of what a reformation is like to be set up in Mansoul, when the devil

is become  
est that  
matter,  
is as it  
thast to  
discern  
thy clov  
and in c  
but thou  
for I do  
"Bes  
to live t  
thee, bu  
shall do  
ed, thou  
and thou  
"Tho  
to good,  
I am sen  
and to g  
into such  
pleasing  
will d  
it up m  
also gove  
and new  
uild it a  
and i sh  
When  
that he v  
as conf  
plus; but  
iniquity,  
on, and  
strengthe  
the noble  
other fi  
aken. C  
on that  
old, by t  
given,  
her seeks  
Mansoul.

to become the corrector of vice.) Thou knowest that all that thou hast now said in this matter, is nothing but guile and deceit, and as it was the first, so it is the last card thou hast to play. Many there be that do soon discern thee when thou shewest them to thy cloven foot: but in thy white, thy light, and in thy transformation, thou art seen but of a few; but thou shalt not do thus with my Mansoul, O Diabolus, for I do still love my Mansoul.

“ Besides, I am not come to put Mansoul upon works to live thereby, should I do so, and I should be like unto thee, but I am come that, by me and by what I have and shall do for Mansoul, they may, to my father, be reconciled, though by their sin they have provoked him to anger, and though by the law they cannot obtain mercy.

“ Thou talkest of subjecting of this town to good, when none desireth it at thy hands, I am sent by my father to possess it myself and to guide it, by the skilfulness of my hands into such a conformity to him as shall be pleasing in his sight. I will therefore possess it myself; I will dispossess it and cast thee quite out; I will set up mine own standard in the midst of them; I will also govern them by new laws, new officers, new motives, and new ways; Yea, I will pull down this town and build it again, and it shall be as though it had not been, and it shall then be the glory of the whole universe.

When Diabolus heard this, and perceived that he was discovered in all his deceits, he was confounded, and utterly put to a non-plus; but having, in himself, the fountain of iniquity, rage and malice against both Shaddai and his son, and the beloved town of Mansoul, what doth he but strengthen himself what he could to give fresh battle to the noble Prince Emanuel? So then now we must have another fight before the town of Mansoul is taken.

Come up then to the mountains you that love to see military actions, and behold, by both sides, how the said fatal blow is given, while one seeks to hold and the other seeks to make himself master of the famous town of Mansoul.

*good, which yet he propounds for the health of Man's soul.*

*All things must be new in Mansoul.*

*Diabolus confounded.*

*New preparations for to fight.*

Diabolus.



Diabolus therefore having withdrawn himself from the wall to his force that was in the heart of the town of Mansoul, Emanuel also returned to the camp; and both of them after their diverse ways, put themselves in a posture fit to bid battle one to another.

*Diabolus designs of holding of Mansoul and therefore contrives to do what mischief he can.*

Diabolus, as filled with despair of retaining in his hands the famous town of Mansoul, resolved to do what mischief he could, if indeed he could do any, to the army of the Prince, and to the famous town of Mansoul, for alas, it was not the happiness of the silly town of Mansoul that was designed by Diabolus, but the utter ruin and overthrow thereof: as now is enough in view, wherefore he commands his officers that they should then, when they see that they could hold the town no longer, do it what harm and mischief they could, by rentng and tearing of men, women and children: for said he, we had better quite demolish the place, and leave it like a ruinous heap, than to leave it, that it may be an habitation for Emanuel.

Emanuel again knowing that the next battle would issue in his being made master of the place, gave out a royal commandment to all his Officers, high Captains, and men of war, to be sure to shew themselves men of war against Diabolus, and all Diabolians; but favourable, merciful and meek to all the old inhabitants of Mansoul: he bend therefore, said the noble Prince, the hottest front of the battle against Diabolus and his men.

*The battle joined and they fight on both sides fiercely.*

So the day being come, the commandment was given, and the Prince's men did bravely stand to their arms, and did as before bend their main force against Ear-gate and Eye-gate. The word was then, Mansoul is won; so they made their assault upon the town. Diabolus also, as fast as he could, with the main of his power, made resistance from within, and his high Lords and chief Captains, for a time fought very cruelly against the Prince's army.

*Ear gate broken open.*

But after three or four notable charges by the Prince and his noble Captains, Ear-gate was broken open, and the bars and bolts,

bolts, wherewith it was used to be fast shut up against  
 the Prince, was broken into a thousand pieces. Then  
 and the Prince's trumpets sound, the Captains shout, the  
 town shake, and Diabolus retreat to his hold. Well,  
 when the Prince's forces had broken open  
 the gate, himself came up, and did set his  
 throne in it; also he set his standard there-  
 upon a mount, that before by his men  
 was cast up to place the mighty slings there-  
 on. The mount was called Mount Hear-  
 well, there therefore the Prince abode, to  
 sit, hard by the going in at the gate. He  
 commanded also that the golden slings should yet be play-  
 ed upon the town, especially against the castle, because,  
 for shelter, thither was Diabolus retreated. Now from  
 the gate the street was straight, even to the house of Mr.  
 Recorder, that so was before Diabolus took the town,  
 and hard by his house stood the castle, which Diabolus,  
 for a long time, had made his irksome den. The Captains  
 therefore did quickly clear that street, by the use of their  
 slings, so that way was made up to the heart of the town.  
 Then did the Prince command, that Captain Boanerges,  
 Captain Conviction, and Captain Judgment should forth-  
 with march up the town to the old § gentle-  
 man's gate. Then did the Captains, in § *Conscience.*  
 most warlike manner, enter into the town  
 Mansoul, and marching in with flying colours, they  
 came up to the Recorder's house, and that  
 was almost as strong as was the castle. Bat-  
 tering-rams they took also with them to plant  
 against the castle gates. When they were  
 come to the house of Mr. Conscience, they  
 knocked and demanded entrance. Now the  
 old gentleman not knowing, as yet, fully their design,  
 kept his gates shut all the time of this fight; wherefore  
 Boanerges demanded entrance at his gates,  
 and no man making answer, he gave it one  
 stroke with the head of a ram, and this made  
 the old gentleman shake, and his house to  
 tremble and totter. Then came Mr. Recorder down to  
 the gate: and as he could with quivering lips, he asked  
 who was there? Boanerges said, 'We are the Captains and  
 commanders

*The Prince's  
 standard set  
 up, and the  
 slings are  
 played still  
 at the castle.*

*They go up  
 to the Re-  
 corder's  
 house.*

*They demand  
 entrance.*

commanders of the great Shaddai, and of the blessed Emanuel his son, and we demand possession of your house for the use of our noble Prince.' And with that the battering rams gave the gate another shake: This made the old gentleman tremble the more, yet durst he not but open the gate; then the King's forces marched in, namely, the three brave Captains mentioned before. Now the Recorder's house was a place of much conveniency for Emanuel, not only because it was near to the castle, and strong, but also because it was large, and fronted the castle, the den where now Diabolus was, for he was now afraid to come out of his hold. As for Mr. Recorder, the Captains carried it very reservedly to him, as yet he knew nothing of the great designs of Emanuel, so that he did not know what judgment to make, nor what would be the end of such thundering beginnings. It was also presently noised in the town, how the Recorder's house was possessed, his rooms taken up, and his palace made the seat of the war; and no sooner was it noised abroad, but they took the alarm as warmly, and gave it out to others of his friends, and, you know, as a snow ball loses nothing by rolling, so in little time the whole town was possessed, that they must expect nothing from the Prince but destruction; and the ground of the business was this. The Recorder was afraid, the Recorder trembled, and the Captains carried it strangely to the Recorder; so many came to see, but when they, with their own eyes, did behold the Captains in the palace, and their battering rams ever playing at the castle gates, to beat them down, they were riveted in their fears, and it made them as in amaze. And, as I said, the man of the house would encrease all this, for whoever came to him, or discoursed with him, nothing would he talk of, tell them, or hear, but that death and destruction now attended Mansoul.

*They go in.*

ed in, namely, the three brave Captains mentioned before. Now the Recorder's

house was a place of much conveniency for Emanuel, not only because it was near to the castle, and strong, but also because it was large, and fronted the castle, the den where now Diabolus was, for he was now afraid to come out of his hold. As for Mr. Recorder, the Captains carried it very reservedly to him, as yet he

*They do keep themselves reserved from the Recorder.*

knew nothing of the great designs of Emanuel, so that he did not know what judgment to make, nor what would be the end of such thundering beginnings. It was also presently noised in the town, how the Recorder's house was possessed, his rooms taken

*His house the seat of war.*

up, and his palace made the seat of the war; and no sooner was it noised abroad, but they took the alarm as warmly, and gave it out to others of his friends, and, you know, as a

snow ball loses nothing by rolling, so in little time the whole town was possessed, that they must expect nothing from the Prince but destruction; and the ground of the business was this. The Recorder was afraid, the Recorder trembled, and the Captains carried it strangely to the Recorder; so many came to see, but when they, with their own eyes, did behold the Captains in the palace, and their battering rams ever playing at the castle gates, to beat them down, they were riveted in their fears, and it made them as in amaze. And, as I said,

*The office of conscience, when he is awakened.*

the man of the house would encrease all this, for whoever came to him, or discoursed with him, nothing would he talk of, tell them, or hear, but that death and destruction now attended Mansoul.

“For (quoth the old gentleman) you are all of you sensible, that we all have been traitors to that one despised, but now famously victorious and glorious Prince Emanuel.

Emanuel. He also



Emmanuel. For he now, as you see, doth not only lie in close siege about us, but hath forced his entrance in at our gates; moreover, Diabolus flies before him, and he hath, as you behold, made of my house a garrison against the castle, where he is. I, for my part, have transgressed greatly, and he that is clean 'tis well for him. But, I say, I have transgressed greatly, in keeping of silence when I should have spoken, and in perverting of justice when I should have executed the same. True, I have suffered something at the hand of Diabolus, for taking part with the laws of King Shaddai; but that, alas! what will that do? will that make compensations for the rebellions and treasons that I have done, and have suffered, without gainsaying, to be committed in the town of Mansoul? O, I tremble to think what will be the end of this so dreadful and so ireful a beginning!"

Now while these brave Captains were thus busy in the house of the old Recorder, Captain Execution was as busy in the other parts of the town, in securing the back streets, and the walls. He also hunted the

*The brave exploits of Capt. Execution.*

Lord Willbewill sorely, he suffered him not to rest in any corner; he pursued him so hard, that he drove him from him, and made him glad to thrust his head into

hole. Also, this mighty warrior did cut three of the Lord Willbewill's officers down to the ground; one was old Mr. Prejudice, who had his crown crack'd in the mutiny; this man was made, by Lord Willbewill, keeper of Ear-gate, and fell by the hand of Captain Execution. There was also one Mr. Backward-to-all-but-naught, and he also was one

*Old Prejudice.*

*Backward-to-all-but-naught slain.*

of the Lord Willbewill's officers, and was the captain of the two guns that once were mounted on the top of Ear-gate, he also was cut down to the ground by the hands of Captain Execution. Besides these two, there was another, a third, and his name

was Captain Treacherous, a vile man this was, but one that Willbewill did put a great deal of confidence in, but him also did this Captain Execution cut down to the ground with the

*Treacherous slain.*

He also made a very great slaughter among my Lord Willbewill's

Willbewill's soldiers, killing many that were stout and sturdy, and wounding of many that, for Diabolus, were nimble and active. But all these were Diabolians; there was not a man, a native of Mansoul hurt.

Other feats of war were also likewise performed by either of the Captains; as at Eye-gate where Captain Goodhope and Captain Charity had a charge, was great execution done, for the Captain Goodhope, with his

*Captain  
Goodhope  
doth slay Cap-  
tain Blind-  
fold.*

own hands, slew one Captain Blindfold the keeper of the gate; this Blindfold was Captain of a thousand men, and they were they that fought with mauls; he also pursued his men, slew many, and wounded more, and made the rest hide their heads in corners.

*And old Ill-  
pause.*

There was also at the gate Mr. Ill-pause of whom you have heard before, he was an old man, and had a beard that reached down to his girdle, the same was he that was orator to Diabolus, he did much mischief in the town of Mansoul, and fell by the hand of Captain Goodhope.

What shall I say, the Diabolians in these days lay dead in every corner, though too many yet were alive in Mansoul.

*The old  
townsmen  
meet and  
consult.*

Now the old Recorder, and my Lord Understanding, with some others of the chief of the town, to wit, such as knew they must stand and fall with the famous town of Mansoul, came together upon a day, and after consultation had, did jointly agree to draw up a petition, and to send it to Emanuel, now while he sat in the gate of Mansoul.

*The town  
does petition  
and are an-  
swered with  
silence.*

So they drew up their petition to Emanuel, the contents whereof were this; 'That they, the old inhabitants of the deplorable town of Mansoul, confessed their sin, and were sorry that they had offended his princely majesty, and prayed that he would spare their lives.'

*The castle  
gates broke  
open.*

Unto this petition he gave no answer at all, and that did trouble them yet so much the more. Now all this while the Captains that were in the Recorder's house, were

playing

ying with the battering rams at the gates of the castle, beat them down. So, after some time, labour and travel, the gate of the castle, that was called Impregnable, was beaten open, and broken into several splinters, and a way made to go up to the hold in which Diabolus hid himself. Then was tidings sent down to Earsate, for Emanuel still abode there, to let him know, that a way was made in at the gates of the castle of Mansoul: but oh! how the trumpets, at the tidings, sounded throughout the Prince's camp, for that now the war was near an end, and Mansoul itself of being set free.

Then the Prince arose from the place where he was, and took with him such of his men of war as were fittest for that expedition, and marched up the street of Mansoul to the old Recorder's house.

*Emanuel  
marches into  
Mansoul.*

Now the Prince himself was clad all in armour of gold, and so he marched up the town with his standard borne before him; but he kept his countenance much reserved, all the way as he went, so that the people could not tell how to gather to themselves love or hatred by his looks. Now as he marched up the street, the townsfolk came out every door to see, and could not but be taken with his person and the glory thereof, but wondered at the reservedness of his countenance; for, as yet, he spake more to them by his actions and works than he did by words or smiles. But also poor Mansoul, (as in

such cases all are apt to do) they interpreted the carriages of Emanuel to them, as Joseph's brethren his to them, even all the quite contrary way: For thought they, *How they interpret Emanuel's carriages.*

Emanuel loved us, he would shew it to us by word or carriage, but none of these he doth; therefore Emanuel hates us. Now if Emanuel hates us, then Mansoul shall suerely be slain, then Mansoul shall quickly become a dunghill. They knew that they had transgressed his father's law, and that against him they had been in with Diabolus his enemy, they also knew that the Prince Emanuel knew all this, for they were convinced that he was as an angel of God, to know all things, that are done in the earth. And this made them think that their condition was miserable, and that the good Prince would make them desolate.



And thought they, what time so fit to do this in as now, when he has the bridle of Mansoul in his hand. And this I took special notice of, that the inhabitants, notwithstanding all this, could not; no, they could not, when they see him march through the town, but cringe, bow, bend, and were ready to lick the dust of his feet. They also wished, a thousand times over, that he would become their Prince and Captain, and would become their protection. They would also, one to another, talk of the comeliness of his person, and how much for glory and valour he outstript the great ones of the world; but poor hearts, as to themselves their thoughts would change, and go upon all manner of extremes. Yea, through the working of them backward and forward, Mansoul became as a ball tossed, and as a rolling thing before the whirlwind.

Now when he was come to the castle gates *He comes up to the castle, and demands Diabolus to surrender himself.* he commanded Diabolus to appear, and to surrender himself into his hands. But, oh, how loth the beast was to appear! how he flunk at it! how he shrunk! how he cringed! yet out he came to the Prince. Then Emanuel commanded, and they took Diabolus and bound him fast in chains, the better to reserve him to the judgment that he had appointed for him. But Diabolus stood up to intreat for himself, that Emanuel would not send him into the deep, but suffer him to depart out of Mansoul in peace.

When Emanuel had taken him and bound *He is taken and bound in chains.* him in chains, he led him into the marketplace, and there, before Mansoul, stripped him of his armour in which he boasted so much before. This now was one of the acts of Triumph of Emanuel over his enemy, and all the while that the giant was stripping, the trumpets of the golden Prince did sound again; the Captains also shouted, and the soldiers did sing for joy.

Then was Mansoul called upon to behold *Mansoul must behold it.* the beginning of Emanuel's triumph over him in whom they so much had trusted, and of whom they so much had boasted in the days when he flattered them.

*He is bound to his char-* Thus having made Diabolus naked in the eyes of Mansoul and before the commanders

the Prince: in the next place he commands that Diabolus should be bound with chains to his chariot wheels. Then leaving of some of his forces, to wit. Captain Boanerges and Captain Conviction, as a guard for the castle gates, that resistance might be made on his behalf, (if any that hithertofoe followed Diabolus should make an attempt to possess it) he did ride in triumph over him quite through the town of Mansoul, and so out at (and before) the gate called Eye-gate, to the plain where his camp did lie.

But you cannot think, unless you had been there as I was, what a shout there was in Emanuel's camp, when they saw the tyrant bound by the hand of their noble Prince, and tied to his chariot wheels.

And they said, "He hath led captivity captive, he hath spoiled principalities and powers, Diabolus is subjected to the power of his sword, and made the object of all derision.

Those also that rode reformades, and that came down to see the battle, they shouted with that greatness of voice, and sung with such melodious notes, that they caused them that dwell in the highest orbs to open their windows put out their heads and look down to see the cause of that glory, Luke xv. 7, 10.

The townsmen also, so many of them as saw this sight were, as it were, astonished, while they looked betwixt the earth and heavens. True, they could not tell what would be the issue of things as to them, all things were done in such excellent methods, and I cannot tell how; but things in the management of them seemed to cast a smile towards the town, so that their eyes, their heads, their hearts, their minds, and all that they had were taken and held while they observed Emanuel's order.

So when the brave Prince had finished this part of his triumph over Diabolus his foe, he turned him up in the midst of his contempt and shame, having given him a charge no more to be a possessor of Mansoul. Then went he from Emanuel, and out of the midst of his camp, to

*riot  
wheels.*

*The Prince  
rides in  
triumph o-  
ver him in  
the sight of  
Mansoul.*

*They sing.*

*The re-  
formadoes  
joy.*

*The men  
of Mansoul  
taken with  
Emanuel.*

inherit the parched places in a salt land, seeking rest, grace, finding none, Mat. 12. 43. at too

Now Captain Boanerges and Captain Conviction, both of them men of great majesty, their faces were like the faces of lions, and their words like the roaring of the sea; and they still quartered in Mr. Conscience's house, of whom mention was made before. When therefore the high and mighty Prince had thus far finished his triumph over Diabolus, the townsmen had more leisure to

*The carriage of Boanerges and of Captain Conviction do crush the spirit of Mansoul.* and to behold the actions of these noble Captains. But the Captains carried it with terror and dread in all that they did (you may be sure they had private instructions so to do) that they kept the town in continual heart aching, and caused, in apprehension, the well being of Mansoul for the future, to hang in doubt before them; that, for some considerable time they neither knew what rest, or ease, or peace, or hope, or comfort.

Nor did the Prince himself, as yet, abide in the town of Mansoul, but in his royal pavilion in the camp, and in the midst of his father's forces. So, at a time convenient,

*The Prince commands, and the Captains put the three chief of Mansoul in ward.* he sent special orders to Captain Boanerges to summon Mansoul, the whole of the town, into the castle yard, and then and there, before their faces, to take my Lord Unbelief, my Lord Standing, Mr. Conscience, and that notable rogue, the Lord Willbewill, and put them in three in a ward, and that they should set a strong guard upon them there, until his pleasure, concerning them, were further known. The which orders, when the Captains put them in execution, made no small addition

to the fears of the town of Mansoul: for now, in their thinking, were their former fears of the ruin of Mansoul confirmed. Now, what death they should die, and how long they should be in dying, was that which most perplexed their heads and hearts; yea, they were afraid that Emanuel would command them all into a deep, the place that the Prince Diabolus was afraid of, for they knew that they had deserved it. Also to die by the sword, in the face of the town, and in the open way



grace, from the hand of so good and so holy a prince, at too troubled them sore. The town was so greatly troubled for the men that were committed to ward, for that they were their y and their guide, and for that they believed, that if those men were cut off, their execution would be but the beginning of the ruin of the town of Mantoul. wherefore what do they, but, together, with the men in prison, draw up a petition to the Prince, and sent it to Emanuel in the hand of Mr. Wouldlive. So he went and came to the Prince's quarters, and presented the petition: the sum of which was

*Mansoul  
greatly  
distressed.*

*They send a  
petition to  
Emanuel  
by the hand  
of Mr.*

"Great and wonderful potentate, victor over Diabolus, and conqueror of the town of Mansoul; we, the miserable inhabitants of the most woful corporation, do humbly beg, that we may find favour in thy sight, and remember not, against us, former transgressors, nor yet the sin of the chief of our town, but spare according to the greatness of thy mercy; and let us not die, but live in thy sight; so shall we be willing to be thy servants, and, if thou shalt think fit, to gather our seats at under thy table."

*Wouldlive.*

So the petitioner went, as was said, with his petition to the Prince, and the Prince took it at his hand, but sent him away with silence. This afflicted the town of Mantoul, but yet considering that now they must either petition or die, for now they could not do any thing else; therefore they consulted again, and sent another petition, and this petition was much after the same manner and method of the former.

*They are  
answered  
with si-  
lence.*

But when the petition was drawn up, by whom should they send it, was the next question; for they would not send this by him, by whom they sent the first, for they thought that the Prince had taken some offence at the manner of his deportment before him, so they attempted to make Captain Conviction their messenger with it, but he said, 'That he neither durst nor would petition Emanuel for them, nor be to the Prince an advocate for

*They peti-  
tion again  
They can-  
not tell by  
rebels,*

*whom to send it.* rebels. yet withal, said he, our Prince good, and you may adventure to send it by the hand of one of your town, provided he went with a rope about his head, and pleaded nothing but mercy.

Well, they made, through fear, their delays as long as they could, and longer than delays were good, but fearing at last the dangerousness of them, they thought but with many a fainting in their minds, to send their petition by Mr. Desires-awake; so they sent Mr. Desires-awake; now he dwelt in a very mean cottage in Mansoul, and he came at his neighbours request: so they told him what, they had done, and what they would do concerning petitioning, and that they did desire of him that he would go therewith to the Prince.

*Mr. Desires-awake goes with the petition to the Prince.* Then said Mr. Desires-awake, why should not I do the best I can to save so famous a town from Destruction? they therefore delivered the petition to him, and told him, how he must address himself to the Prince, and wished him ten thousand good speeds. So he comes to the Prince's pavilion at the first, and asked to speak with his majesty: so word

was carried to Emanuel, and the Prince came out to the man. When Mr. Desires-awake saw the Prince, he fell flat with his face to the ground, and cried out, "O thou Mansoul might live before thee!" and with that he presented the petition. The which when the

*His entertainment.* Prince had read, he turned away for a while and wept, but refraining himself, he turned again to the man (who all this while lay crying at his feet as at the first) and said to him, "Go thy way to thy place, and I will consider of thy requests."

Now you may think, that they of Mansoul, that had sent him, with what guilt and with what fear, lest the petition should be rejected, could not but look with many a long look, and that too with strange workings of heart to see what would become of their petition; at last they

*His return and answer to them* saw their messenger coming back; so when he was come, they asked him how he fared, what Emanuel said? and what was become of the petition? but he told them that he

would

would be silent, till he came to the prison to my Lord Mayor, my Lord Willbewill, and Mr. Recorder: so he went forward towards the prison house, where the men of Mansoul lay bound, but Oh, what a multitude flocked after, to hear what the messenger said. So when he was come, and had shewn himself at the gate of the prison, my Lord Mayor himself looked as white as a clout, the Recorder also did shake: but they asked and said, Come, good Sir, what did the great Prince say to you? then said Mr. Desiresawake, when I came to my Lord's pavilion, I called, and I came forth; I fell prostrate at his feet, and delivered to him my petition, (for the greatness of his person and the glory of his countenance would not suffer me to stand, upon my legs.) Now as he received the petition, I cried, "O that Mansoul might live before thee!" So when for a while he had looked thereon, he turned him about and said to his servant, 'Go thy way to thy place again, and I will consider thy requests.' The messenger added, moreover, and said, 'The Prince to whom you sent me, is such a one for beauty and glory, that who so sees him, must both love and fear him; I, for my part, can do no less; but I know not what will be the end of these things.'

At this answer, they were all at a stand, both they in prison, and they that followed the messenger thither, to hear the news, or, what manner of interpretation to put upon what the Prince had said. Now, when the prison was cleared of the throng, the Prisoners, among themselves, began to comment uponmanuel's words. My Lord Mayor said, that the answer did not look with a rugged face; but Willbewill said, it beckoneth evil; the Recorder, that it was a messenger of death: now they that were left, and that stood behind, and so could not so well hear what the prisoners said, some of them caught hold of a piece or a sentence, and some on a bit of another; some took hold of what the messenger said, and some of the prisoners judgment thereon; so none had the right understanding of things; but you cannot imagine what work these people made,

*that sent him.*

*Mansoul confounded at the answer.*

*The prisoners judgment upon the Prince's answer.*

*Misgiving thoughts breed*

and



# THE HOLY WAR.

*fusion in  
Mansoul.*

and what a confusion there was in Mansoul, now. For presently they that had heard what was said, flew about the town, crying one thing, and another the quite contrary, and both were sure enough they told true, for they did hear they said, with their ears, what was said, and therefore could not be deceived. One would say, We must all be killed; another would say, We must all be saved; and a third would say, That the Prince would not be concerned with Mansoul? and a fourth, That the prisoners must be suddenly put to death. And as I said, every one stood to it, that he told his tale the rightest, and all others but he were out. Wherefore Mansoul, hath molestation upon molestation, nor could any man know, on what rest the sole of his foot; for one would go by now, and as he went, if he heard his neighbour tell his tale, to be sure he would tell the quite contrary, and both would stand in it, that he told the truth: nay, some of them had got this story by the end, That the Prince did intend to put Mansoul to the sword. And now it began to be dark, wherefore poor Mansoul was in sad perplexity all that night until the next morning:

*Mansoul  
in perplex-  
ity.*

But so far as I could gather, by the best information that I could get, all this hubbub came through the word that the Recorder had said, when he told them that, in his judgement, the Prince's answer was a messenger of death. It was this that fired the town, and that began the fright, Mansoul; for Mansoul, in former times, did use to count that Mr. Recorder was a Seer, and that his sentence was equal to the best of oracles, and thus was Mansoul a terror to itself.

And now they begin to feel what was the effects of, stubborn rebellion, and unlawful resistance against the Prince. I say, they now began to feel the effects thereof, by guilt and fear, that now had swallowed them up, and who more involved in the one, but they that were most in the other, to wit, the chief of the town of Mansoul.

*They re-  
solve to*

To be brief, when the same of the fright was out of the town, and the prisoners had little recovered themselves, they take to them-

After

## THE HOLY WAR.

gives some heart, and think to petition the Prince for life again. So they did draw up a third petition, the contents whereof was this.

"Prince Emanuel the Great, Lord of the worlds, and master of mercy, we thy wretched, miserable, dying town of Mansoul, do confess unto thy great and glorious Majesty that we have sinned against thy father and thee, and are no more worthy to be called thy Mansoul, but rather be cast into the pit. If thou wilt slay us we have deserved it, if thou wilt condemn us to the deep, we cannot but say thou art righteous. We cannot complain, whatever thou doest, or however thou carriest it towards us. But oh! let mercy reign! and let it be extended us. O, let mercy take hold upon us? and free us from our transgressions, and we will sing of thy mercy, and of thy judgment. Amen."

This petition, when drawn up, was designed to be sent to the Prince, as the first; and who should carry it, that was the question. Some said, let him do it that went with the first, but others thought not good to do that, and that because he sped no better. Now there was an old man in the town, whose name was Mr. Good-deed. A man that bore only the name, but had nothing of the nature of the thing; now some were in favour of him, but the Recorder was by no means for that; 'For (said he) we now stand in need of, and are pleading for mercy; wherefore to send our petition, by a man of his name, will seem to cross the petition itself; should we make Mr. Good-deed our messenger, when our petition cries for mercy?

Besides, (quoth the old Gentleman) should the Prince know, as he receives the petition, ask him, and say, what is thy name? as nobody knows but he will; and he should say, Old Good-deed; what think you. Would Emanuel then let Old Good-deed save you from your distresses. And if he says so, I am sure we are lost, nor can a thousand of old Good-deeds save Mansoul."

After the Recorder had given in his reasons, why old Good-

*petition again*

*Their petition*

*Prayer attended with difficulty.*

*Old Good-deed propounded as a fit person to carry the petition the old Recorder opposes it, and he is rejected.*

# THE HOLY WAR.

Good deed should not go with his petition to Emanuel since the  
the rest of the prisoners, and chief of Mansoul opposed as he  
also, and so old Good deed was laid aside, and they agreed  
ed to send Mr. Desiresawake again; so they sent for him at his  
and desired him that he would, a second time, go with count  
their petition, to the Prince, and he readily told them he mult  
would. But they bid him, that, in any wise, he should upon  
take heed, that in no word or carriage; he gave offence to t  
to the Prince, for by doing so, for ought we can tell by enq  
you may bring Mansoul into utter destruction, said they, am! P

No Mr. Desiresawake, when he saw that he must go, bec  
this errand, besought that they would grant that Mr. so gr

Wet eyes might go with him. Now there. W  
*Mr. Desiresawake goes again and takes one Wet eyes with him.* Wet eyes, was a near neighbour of Mr. this e  
Desires, a poor man, a man of a broken spirit, himself  
rit, yet one that could speak well to a petition thought  
on. So they granted that he should go for my p  
with him. Wherefore they address themselves could b  
selves to their business; Mr. Desires put would I  
rope upon his head, and Mr. Wet eyes and mysl  
went with hands wringing together. Thus they went they ha  
the Prince's pavilion. beg o

Now when they went to petition this third time, there, to  
were not without thoughts, that by often coming there. re."  
might be a burden to the Prince. Wherefore when they Then  
were come to the door of his pavilion, they first made by com  
their apology for themselves, and for their coming Desires  
trouble Emanuel so often; and they said, 'That this, and

*Their apology for their coming again.* came not hither to day; for that they did he,  
lighted in being troublesome, or, for that yes, of  
they delighted to hear themselves talk; but that  
for that necessity caused them to come to his presence,  
Majesty; They could, they said, have no our wi  
rest, day nor night, because of their trans. Then

gressions against Shaddai, and against Emanuel his son made t  
They also thought, that some misbehaviour of Mr. Desires Lor  
siresawake, the last time, might give distaste to his high "O  
ness; and so cause that he returned from so merciful now n  
Prince empty and without countenance.' So when the signed  
had made this apology, Mr. Desiresawake, cast himself think w  
prostrate upon the ground, as at the first, at the feet of ame w  
the mighty Prince, saying, Oh? that Mansoul, might was my  
live before thee? And so he delivered his petition. Tharen, a  
Prince



Since then having read the petition, turned aside a little as before, and coming again to the place where the petitioner lay on the ground, he demanded what his name was, and of what esteem in the count of Mansoul? For that he, above all the multitude in Mansoul, should be sent to upon such an errand. Then said the man to the Prince, "O let not my Lord be angry; and enquirest thou after the name of such a dead dog as I am! Pass by I pray thee, and take no notice of whom I am, because there is, as thou very well know-

Mr. De-  
fies, free  
speech to  
his Prince.

so great a disproportion between me and thee. Why the townsmen chuse to send me this errand to my Lord, is best known to themselves, but it could not be, for that they thought that I had favour with my Lord.

For my part, I am out of charity with myself, who then could be in love with me? Yet live I would, and so would I that my townsmen should; and because both they and myself are guilty of great transgressions; therefore, they have sent me, and I am come, in their names, to beg of my Lord for mercy. Let it please thee, therefore, to incline to mercy; but ask not what thy servants here."

Then said the Prince, "And what is he that is become my companion, in this so weighty a matter?" So Mr. Defies told Enmanuel, that he was a poor neighbour of his, and one of his most intimate associates, and his name, said he, may it please your most excellent Majesty, is Wet-eyes, of the town of Mansoul. I know that there are many of that name, that are naught, but I hope it will be no hindrance, to my Lord, that I have brought my poor neighbour with me.

Then Mr. Wet-eyes fell on his face to the ground, and made this apology for his coming with his neighbour to his Lord.

"O my Lord, quoth he, what I am I know not myself, nor whether my name be designed or true, especially when I begin to think what some have said, namely, that this name was given me, because Mr. Repentance was my father. Good men have bad children, and the upright and sincere do oftentimes beget

Mr. Wet-  
eyes apology  
for his com-  
ing with his  
neighbour.

hypocrites. My mother also called me this name from my cradle, but whether because of the moistness of my brain, or because of the softness of my heart. I see dirt in mine own tears, and filthyness in the bottom of my prayers. But I pray thee, (all this while the gentlemen wept) that thou wouldst not remember against us our transgressions, nor take offence at the unqualifiedness of thy servants, but mercifully pass by the sin of Mansoul, and refrain from the glorifying of thy grace no longer."

So at this bidding they arose, and both stood trembling before him, and he spake to them to this purpose.

"The town of Mansoul hath grievously rebelled against my Father, in that they have rejected him from being their King, and chosen to themselves for their Captain, a liar, a murderer, and a runagate slave. For this Diabolus and your pretended Prince, though once so highly accounted of by you, made rebellion against my Father and me even in our palace and highest court there, thinking to become a Prince and a King. But being timely discovered, and apprehended, and for his wickedness bound in chains, and separated into the pit, with those that were his companions, he offered himself to you, and you have received him.

*The original of Diabolus.* timely discovered, and apprehended, and for his wickedness bound in chains, and separated into the pit, with those that were his companions, he offered himself to you, and you have received him.

"Now this is, and for a long time hath been, an high affront to my Father, wherefore my Father sent to you a powerful army, to reduce you to your obedience. But you know how those men, their Captains, and their counsels were esteemed of you, and what they received at your hand. You rebelled against them, you shut your gates upon them, you bid them battle, you fought them, and fought for Diabolus against them. So they sent to my Father for more power, and I, with my men, are come to subdue you. But as ye treated the servants, so you treated their Lord; you stood up in hostile manner against me, you shut up your gates against me, you turned the deaf ear to me, and resisted as long as ye could; but now we have made a conquest of you. Did you cry to me for mercy, so long as you had hopes that you might prevail against me? But now I have taken the town, you cry, but why did you not cry before, when the white flag

mercy, and the red flag of justice, and the black flag at threatened execution, were set up to cite you to it? Now I have conquered your Diabolus, you come to me for your ; but why did you not help me against the mighty? Let I will consider your petition, and will answer it so, as will be for my glory.

“Go bid Captain Boanerges, and Captain Conviction, bring the prisoners out to me, into the camp, tomorrow; and say you to Captain Judgment, and Captain Execution, Stay, you in the castle, and take good heed to yourselves, that you keep all quiet in Mansoul, until you shall hear further from me; and with that he turned himself from them, and went into his royal pavilion again.

So the petitioners having received this answer from the Prince, returned as at the first, to go to their companions again. But they had not gone far, but thoughts began to work in their minds, that no mercy, as yet, was intended by the Prince to Mansoul: so they went to the place where the prisoners lay bound; but the workings of their mind about what would become of Mansoul, had such strong power over them, that, by that they were come to them that sent them, they were scarce able to deliver their message.

But they came at length to the gates of the town (now the townsmen, with earnestness, were waiting for their return) where many met them to know what answer was made to the petition. They then cried out to those that were sent, What news from the Prince, and what hath Emanuel said, they said, They must (as afore) go up to the prison, and their deliver there message. So

way they went to the prison with a § multi- § Of in-  
side at their heels. Now when they were quistive  
come to the gates of the prison, they told thoughts.

The first part of Emanuel's speech to the prisoners, to wit, How he reflected upon their disloyalty to his Father and himself, and how they had chuse, and closed with Diabolus; had fought for him, hearkened to him, and been ruled by him, but had despised him and his men. This made the prisoners look pale;

at the messengers proceeded, and said, He, *The messen-*  
the prince, said moreover, that he would *gers in tel-*  
consider your petition, and give such answer *ling their*



*tale fright* thereto, as would stand with his glory. And there  
*the prisoners* as these words were spoken, Mr. Wet-ey  
 gave a great sigh. At this they were all  
 them struck into their dumps, and could not tell what  
 say; fear also posselt them in a marvellous manner, and  
 death seemed to sit upon some of their eyebrows. Now  
 there was in the company a notable sharp witted fellow,

*Old Inqui-  
 sitive.*

mean man of estate, and his name was  
 Inquisitive; this man asked the petitioner  
 if they had told out every whit of what Em-  
 nuel had said. And they answered, Ven-  
 ly no. Then said Inquisitive, I thought so indeed. Pr-  
 what was it more than he said unto you? Then the  
 paused a while, but at last they brought out all, saying  
 the Prince did bid us bid Captain Boanerges, and Cap-  
 tain Conviction bring the prisoners down to him to mor-  
 row, and that Captain Judgment, and Captain Execu-  
 cution, should take charge of the castle and town, till the  
 should hear further from him. They said also, That  
 when the Prince had commanded them thus to do, he im-  
 mediately turned his back upon them, and went to the  
 royal pavilion.

But O, how this return! and especially the last clause  
 of it, The the prisoners must go out to the Prince into  
 the camp, brake all their loins in pieces. Wherefore, with  
 one voice, they set up a cry that reached up to the hea-

vens: this done, each of the three prepared  
 § *Conscience* himself to die, (and the § Recorder said unto  
 them, This was the thing that I feared) for  
 they concluded, that to morrow, by that the sun was  
 down, they should be tumbled out of the world. The  
 whole town also, counted of no other, but that in the  
 time and order, they must all drink of the same cup.  
 Wherefore the town of Mansoul spent that night in  
 mourning, and sackloth and ashes. The prisoners also  
 when the time was come for them to go down before the  
 Prince, dressed themselves in mourning attire, with ropes  
 upon their heads. The whole town of Mansoul also threw  
 ed themselves upon the wall, all clad in mourning weeds,  
 if perhaps the Prince, with sight thereof, might be moved  
 with compassion. But, Oh! how the § bul-

§ *Vain  
 thoughts*

bodies that were in the town of Mansoul, did  
 now concern themselves; they did run here

And there through the streets of the town by companies ;  
 flying out as they ran in tumultuous ways, one after one  
 in manner, and another the quite contrary, to the almost ut-  
 ter distraction of Mansoul.

Well the time is come that the prisoners must go down  
 the camp, and appear before the Prince : and this was  
 the manner of their going down ; Captain Boanerges  
 went with a guard before them, and Captain  
 conviction came behind, and the prisoners  
 went down in chains in the midst ; so I say,  
 the prisoners went down in the midst, and the  
 guard went with flying colours behind and  
 before, but the prisoners went with drooping spirits.

*The pri-  
 soners had  
 to trial.*

Or, more particularly thus :

The prisoners went down all in mourning,  
 they put ropes upon themselves ; they went on  
 smiting of themselves on the breasts, but durst  
 not lift up their eyes to heaven. Thus they went out at  
 the gate of Mansoul, till they came into the midst of the  
 Prince's army ; the sight and glory of which, did greatly  
 heighten their affliction. Nor could they now longer for-  
 bear ; but cry out aloud, ' O unhappy men ! O wretched  
 men of Mansoul ! ' Their chains still mixing their dolorous  
 notes, with the cries of the prisoners, made the noise more  
 lamentable.

*How they  
 went.*

So when they were come to the door of  
 the Prince's pavilion, they cast themselves  
 prostrate upon the place ; then one went  
 in and told his Lord that the prisoners were  
 come down. The Prince then ascended a  
 throne of state, and sent for the prisoner in ; who when  
 they came did tremble before him, also they covered their  
 faces with shame. Now as they drew near to the place  
 where he sat, they threw themselves down before him ;  
 then said the Prince to Captain Boanerges, bid the  
 prisoners stand upon their feet ? then they stood trembling  
 before him, and he said, Are you the men that heretofore  
 were the servants of Shaddai ? And they  
 said, Yes, Lord, yes. Then said the Prince  
 again, are you the men that did suffer your-  
 selves to be corrupted, and defiled by that  
 abominable one Diabolus ? And they said,

*They fall  
 down pro-  
 strate be-  
 fore him.*

*They are  
 upon their  
 trial.*

We did more than suffer it Lord ; for we chuse it out of

our own mind. The Prince asked further, saying, *Com* you have been content that your slavery should have *soul* continued under his tyranny as long as you had lived? *Ther* said the prisoners, Yes, Lord, yes, for his ways were *to stand* pleasing to our flesh, and we were grown aliens to a better *stood* state. And did you, said he, when I came up against the *sins, tr* town of Mansoul heartily wish, that I might not have, *the wh* victory over you? Yes, Lord, yes, said they. *to time* said the Prince, and what punishment is it, think you, *I have* that you deserve at my hand, for these and other your *Father* high and mighty sins? and they said both death and *do for* the deep, Lord; for we have deserved no less. He asked *aid, b* again, if they had ought to say for them- *and se* selves, why the sentence that they confessed *ral pa* that they had deserved, should not be passed *Willb* upon them? And they said, We can say no- *k to l* thing, Lord thou art just, for we have sin- *throu* ned, Then said the Prince, and for what are these ropes *Mo* upon your heads? The prisoners answered, These ropes *of the* are to bind us withal to the place of execu- *ty fo* tion, if mercy be not pleasing in thy sight, *and t* So he further asked, if all the men in the *heav* town of Mansoul were in this confession, *T* as they? And they answered, all the *of g* natives, Lord; but for the \* Diabolians that *their* came into the town, when the tyrant got *neck* possession of us, we can say nothing for *wher* them. *nue*

*They condemn themselves.* They said, We can say nothing, Lord thou art just, for we have sinned, Then said the Prince, and for what are these ropes upon your heads? The prisoners answered, These ropes are to bind us withal to the place of execution, if mercy be not pleasing in thy sight, So he further asked, if all the men in the town of Mansoul were in this confession, as they? And they answered, all the natives, Lord; but for the \* Diabolians that came into the town, when the tyrant got possession of us, we can say nothing for them.

Then the Prince commanded that an Herald should be called: and that he should, in the midst and throughout the camp of Emanuel, proclaim and that with sound of trumpet, that the Prince, the son of Shaddai had, in his Fathers name, and for his Father's glory, gotten a perfect conquest and victory over Mansoul, and that the prisoners should follow him and say, *Amen*. So this was done as he had commanded. And presently the || music that was in the upper region sounded melodiously. The Captains that were in the camp shouted, and the soldiers did sing songs of triumph to the Prince. The colours waved in the wind, and great joy was every where, only

† A victory proclaimed

|| Joy for the victory.

\* Corruptions and lusts.



was wanting, as yet, in the hearts of the men of Mansoul.

Then the Prince called for the prisoners to come and to stand again before him, and they came and stood trembling, and he said unto them, 'The sins, trespasses and iniquities, that you with the whole town of Mansoul, have from time to time, committed against my father and me, I have power and commandment from my Father, to forgive the town of Mansoul, and do forgive you accordingly.' And having so said, he gave them written in parchment, and sealed with seven seals, a large and general pardon, commanding both my Lord Mayor, my Lord Willbewill, and Mr. Recorder, to proclaim, and to cause it to be proclaimed, to-morrow by that the sun is up, throughout the whole town of Mansoul.

Moreover, the Prince stript the prisoners of their mourning weeds, and gave them beauty for the ashes, the oil of joy for mourning, and the garment of praise, for the spirit of heaviness. Isa. 61. 3.

Then he gave to each of the three, jewels of gold, and precious stones, and took away their ropes, and put chains of gold about their necks, and ear rings in their ears. Now the prisoners when they did hear the gracious words of Prince Emanuel, and had beheld all that was done unto them, fainted almost quite away; for the grace, the benefit, the pardon, was sudden, glorious, and so big that they were not able, without staggering, to stand up under it. Yea, my Lord Willbewill swooned out right: but the Prince kept to him, put his everlasting arms under him, embraced him, kissed him, and bid him be of good cheer, for all should be performed according to his word. He also did kiss and embrace, and smile upon the other two that were Willbewill's companions, saying, take these as further tokens of my love, favour and compassions to you; and I charge you, that you, Mr. Recorder, tell in the town of Mansoul, what you have heard and seen.

Then were their fetters broken to pieces before their faces, and cast into the air, and their steps were enlarged under them. Then

*They are pardoned, and are commanded to proclaim it to-morrow in Mansoul.*

*Their rags are taken from them.*

*A strange alteration.*

*Their guilt they*

they fell down at the feet of the Prince, and kissed his feet, and wetted them with tears, also they cried out with a mighty strong voice, saying, 'Blessed be the glory of the Lord from this place.' So they were bid

*They are  
sent home  
with pipe  
and tabor.*

were made

*Captain  
Credence  
guards them  
home.*

*When faith  
and pardon  
meet toge-  
ther, Judge-  
ment and  
Execution  
depart  
from the  
heart.*

rise up, and go to the town, and tell to Mansoul what the Prince had done. He commanded also, that one, with pipe and tabor, should go and play before them all the way into the town of Mansoul. Then was fulfilled what they never looked for, and they were made to possess that which they never dreamed of. The Prince also called for the noble Captain Credence, and commanded, That he and some of his officers should march before the noble men of Mansoul, with flying colours into the town. He gave also into Captain Credence a charge, That about that time that the Recorder did read the general pardon in the town of Mansoul, that at that very time he should, with flying colours, march in at Eye-gate, with his ten thousands at his feet, and that he should so go, until he came by the high street of the town up to the castle gates, and that himself should take possession thereof, against his Lord came thither. He commanded moreover, That he should bid Captain Judgment, and Captain Execution, to leave the strong hold to him, and to withdraw from Mansoul, and to return into the camp, with speed unto the Prince.

And now was the town of Mansoul also delivered from the terror of the first four Captains and their men.

Well, I told you before, how the prisoners were entertained by the noble Prince Emanuel, and how they behaved themselves before him, and how he sent them away to their home with pipe and tabor going before them. And now you must think, that those of the town that had all this while waited to hear of their death, could not but be exercised with sadness of mind, and with thoughts that pricked like thorns. Nor could their thoughts be kept to any one point; the wind blew with them all this while as great uncertainties, yea, their hearts were like a balance that had been disquieted with shaking hand. But at

last

As they, with many a long look, looked over the wall  
 of Mansoul, they thought that they saw some returning to  
 the town; and thought again who should they be? At  
 last they discerned that they were the prisoners. But can  
 you imagine, how their hearts were surprised with won-  
 der! Especially when they perceived also in that equi-  
 page, and with what honour they were sent home. They  
 went down to the camp in black, but they came back to  
 the town in white; they went down to the  
 camp in ropes, they came back in chains of *A strange*  
 gold; they went down to the camp with their *alteration.*  
 feet in fetters, but they came back with their  
 steps enlarged under them; they went also to the camp  
 looking for death, but they came back from thence with  
 assurance of life; they went down to the camp with heavy  
 hearts, but came back again with pipe and tabor playing  
 before them. So, so soon as they were come to Eye-gate,  
 the poor and tottering town of Mansoul adventured to  
 give a shout; and they gave such a shout, as made the  
 Captains in the Prince's army, leap at the sound thereof.  
 Alas! for them poor hearts, who could blame them, since  
 their dead friends were come to life again! For it was to  
 them as life from the dead, to see the ancients of the town  
 of Mansoul to shine in such splendor. They looked for  
 nothing but the ax and the block; but behold! joy and  
 gladness, comfort and consolation, and such melodious  
 notes attending of them, that was sufficient to make a  
 sick man well. Isa. 33. 24. So when they came up, they  
 saluted each other with Welcome, welcome, and blessed  
 be he that spared you. They added also, we see it is well  
 with you, but how must it go with the town of Mansoul  
 and will it go well with the town of Mansoul,  
 said they! Then answered them the Recorder, *Conscience*  
 and my Lord Mayor, Oh! tydings! glad ty- *The wonder-*  
 dings! good tydings of good; and of great *standing.*  
 joy to poor Mansoul! Then they gave ano-  
 ther shout, that made the earth to ring again. After  
 this, they enquired yet more particularly, how things  
 went in the camp, and what message they had from E-  
 manuel to the town. So they told them all passages that  
 had happened to them at the camp, and every thing that  
 the Prince did to them. This made Mansoul wonder at  
 the wisdom and grace of the Prince Emanuel; then they  
 told



told them what they had received at his hands, for the whole town of Mansoul; and the Recorder delivered it in these words, *PARDON, PARDON, PARDON* for Mansoul; and this shall Mansoul know to morrow. Then he commanded, and they went and summoned Mansoul to meet together in the market place to morrow, there to hear their general pardon read.

But who can think what a turn, what a change, what an alteration this hint of things did make in the countenance of the town of Mansoul; no man of Mansoul could sleep that night for joy; in every house there was joy and musick, singing and making merry, telling and hearing of Mansoul's happiness was then all that Mansoul had to do; and this was the burden of all their song, 'Oh more of this at the rising of the sun! more of this to morrow!

Who thought yesterday, would one say, that this day would have been such a day to us? And who thought, that saw our prisoners go down in irons, that they would have returned in chains of gold! yea, they that judged themselves as they went to be judged of their judge, were, by his mouth, acquitted, not for that they were innocent, but of the Prince's mercy, and sent home with pipe and tabor.'

But this is the common custom of Princes, do they use to show such kind of favours to traitors? No! this is only peculiar to Shaddai, and unto Emanuel his son.

Now morning drew on apace, wherefore the Lord Mayor, the Lord Willbewill, and Mr. Recorder, came down to the market place at the time that the Prince had appointed, where the townsfolk were waiting for them; and when they came, they came in that attire, and in that glory, that the Prince had put them into the day before, and the street was lightened with their glory; so the Mayor, Recorder, and my Lord Willbewill drew down to Mouth gate, which was at the lower end of the market place, because that, of old time, was the place where they used to read publick matters. Thither therefore they came in their robes, and their tabor went before them. Now the eagerness of the people, to know the full of the matter, was great.

*The man-* Then the Recorder stood upon his feet, and

and first beckoned with his hand for a silence, *ner of read-*  
 read out, with a loud voice, the pardon, *ing the par-*  
 when he came to these words, 'The *don.*  
 Lord, the Lord God, merciful and gracious,  
 pardoning iniquity, transgressions and sins;' Exod. 34.  
 and to them, 'All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be  
 forgiven, &c.' Mark 3. they could not forbear, but leap  
 for joy. For this you must know, that there was conjoin-  
 ed herewith every man's name in Mansoul; also, the seals  
 of the pardon made a brave shew.

When the Recorder had made an end of reading the  
 pardon, the townsmen ran upon the walls of  
 the town, and leaped and skipped thereon for *Now they*  
 joy, and bowed themselves seven times with *tread upon*  
 their faces towards Emanuel's pavilion, and *the flesh.*  
 shouted out aloud for joy, and said, Let Ema-  
 nuel live forever.

Then order was given to the young men *Lively and*  
 of Mansoul, that they should ring the bells *warm*  
 for joy. So the bells did ring, and the peo- *thoughts.*  
 ple sing, and the musick go in every house in  
 Mansoul.

When the Prince had sent home the three *The car-*  
 prisoners of Mansoul with joy, and pipe and *riage of*  
 labor; he commanded his Captains, with all *the camp.*  
 the field officers and soldiers throught his ar-  
 my, to be ready in that morning, that the Recorder  
 should read the pardon in Mansoul, to do his further plea-  
 sure. So the morning, as I have shewed, being come  
 as the Recorder had made an end of reading the par-  
 don, Emanuel commanded, that all the trumpets in the  
 camp should sound, that the colours should be displayed  
 half of them upon Mount Gracious, and half  
 upon Mount Justice. He commanded *Faith will*  
 so that all the Captains should shew them- *not be si-*  
 selves in all their harness, and that the sol- *lent when*  
 diers shout for joy. Nor was Captain Credence *Mansoul*  
 though in the Castle, silent in such a day, *is saved.*  
 as he from the top of the hold shewed himself  
 with sound of trumpet to Mansoul, and to the Prince's  
 camp.

Thus have I shewed you the manner and way that E-  
 manuel took to recover the town of Mansoul, from under  
 the

*The Prince  
displays his  
graces be-  
fore Man-  
soul.*

the hand and power of the tyrant Diabolus. Now when the Prince had completed these outward ceremonies of his joy, he again commanded, that his Captain and soldiers should shew into Mansoul some feats of war. So they presently addressed themselves to this work. But, oh! with what agility, nimbleness, dexterity and bravery did these military men discover their skill in feats of war, to the now gazing townsfolk of Mansoul.

*They are  
ravished at  
the sight of  
them.*

They marched, they counter marched, they opened to the right and left, they divided, and subdivided, they closed, they wheeled, they made good their front and rear with their right and left wings, and twenty things more, with that aptness, and then were all as they were again, that they took, yea ravished the hearts that were in Mansoul to behold it. But add to this, the handling of their arms, the managing of their weapons of war, were many valiant takings to Mansoul and me.

When this action was over, the whole town of Mansoul came out as one man to the Prince in the camp, to thank him and to praise him, for his abundance of favour, and to beg that it would please him to let grace to come unto Mansoul with his men, and there to make up their quarters forever. And this they did in most humble manner, bowing themselves seven times to the ground before him. Then said he, All peace be to you: So the town came nigh and touched with the hand the top of his golden sceptre, and they said. Oh! that the Prince Emanuel, with his Captains and men of war, would dwell in Mansoul forever: and that his battering rams and slings might be lodged in her for the use and service of the Prince, for the help and strength of Mansoul, for (said they) we have room for thee, we have room for thy men, we have also room for thy weapons of war, and a place to make a magazine for thy carriages. Do it Emanuel, and thou shalt be King and Captain in Mansoul for ever. Yea, govern thou also according to all the desires of thy soul, and make thou governors and Princes under thee.

*Say and  
bold to it  
Mansoul.*

and they said. Oh! that the Prince Emanuel, with his Captains and men of war, would dwell in Mansoul forever: and that his battering rams and slings might be lodged in her for the use and service of the Prince, for the help and strength of Mansoul, for (said they) we have room for thee, we have room for thy men, we have also room for thy weapons of war, and a place to make a magazine for thy carriages. Do it Emanuel, and thou shalt be King and Captain in Mansoul for ever. Yea, govern thou also according to all the desires of thy soul, and make thou governors and Princes under thee.



thy Captains and men of war, and we will become thy servants, and thy laws shall be our direction.

They added moreover, and prayed his majesty to consider thereof. for, said they, 'If now, after all this grace shewed upon us, thy miserable town of Mansoul, thou shouldest withdraw thou and thy Captains from us, the town of Mansoul will die. Yea, (said they) our blessed Emanuel, if thou shouldest depart from us now, now thou hast done so much good for us, and shewed so much mercy unto us, what wilt follow, but that our joy will be as if it had not been; and our enemies will, a second time, come upon us with more rage than at the first: therefore we beseech thee, O thou the desire of our eyes and strength, and life of our poor town, accept of this petition that now we have made unto our Lord, and come again and dwell in the midst of us, and let us be thy Manseple. Besides, Lord, we do not know but *Their fears.* that to this day many Diabolians may yet be lurking in the town of Mansoul, and they will betray us when thou shalt leave us, into the hands of Diabolus Managain; and who knows what designs, plots or contrivances, he have passed betwixt them about these things already; and now we are to fall again into his horrible hands. Wherefore let it please thee to accept of our palace for thy place of residence, and of the houses of the best men in our town, for the reception of thy soldiers, and their furniture.'

Then said the Prince, 'If I come to your town, will ye suffer me further to prosecute that which is in mine heart, against mine enemies and yours; yea, will you help me in my undertakings?'

*The Prince's question to Mansoul.*

They answered, 'We know not what we shall do, we did not think once that we should have been such traitors to Shaddai as we have proved to be: what then shall we say to our

*Their answer.*

Lord? let him put no trust in his saints, let the Prince take well in our castle, and make of our town a garrison; let him set his noble Captains, and his warlike soldiers, over Man; yea, let him conquer us with his love, and overcome us with his grace, and then surely shall he be but with us and help us, as he was, and did that morning that our pardon was read unto us; we shall comply with this our

Lord,

Lord, and with his ways, and fall in with his word, gainst the mighty.'

One word more, and thy servants have done, and in this will trouble our Lord no more. 'We know not the depth of the wisdom of thee our Prince. Who could have thought, that had been ruled by his reason, that so much sweet as we do now enjoy, should have come out of those bitter trials wherewith we were tried at the first; but, Lord, let light go before, and let love come after; yea, take us by the hand, and lead us by thy counsel, and let this always bide upon us, that all things shall be for the best for thy servants, and come to our Mansoul, and do as it pleaseth thee: or, Lord, come to our Mansoul, do what thou wilt, so thou keepest us from sinning, and makest us serviceable to thy majesty.'

*He consenteth to dwell in Mansoul, and promi-  
seth to come in to morrow.* Then said the Prince to the town of Mansoul again, 'Go return to your houses in peace, I will willingly, in this, comply with your desires: I will remove my royal pavilion, on, I will draw up my forces before Eye-gate to morrow, and so will march forwards into the town of Mansoul: I will possess myself of your castle of Mansoul, and will set my soldiers over you; yea, I will yet do things in

Mansoul that cannot be parallel'd in any nation, country, or kingdom under heaven.'

Then did the men of Mansoul give a shout, and returned to their houses in peace: they also told to their kindred and friends, the good that Emanuel had promised to Mansoul; and to morrow, said they, he will march into our town, and take up his dwelling, he and his men, in Mansoul.

*Mansoul's preparation for his expectation.* Then went out the inhabitants of the town of Mansoul with haste to the green trees, and to the meadows, to gather boughs and flowers, wherewith to strew the streets against their Prince, the son of Shaddai, should come: they also made garlands, and other fine works, to be token how joyful they were, and should be to receive their Emanuel into Mansoul: yea, they strewed the street quite from Eye-gate to the Castle gate, the place where the Prince should be. They also prepared for his coming what musick the town of Mansoul would afford

ford, that they might play before him to the place of his habitation.

So at the time appointed he makes his approach to Mansoul, and the gates were set open for him, there also the ancients and elders of Mansoul met him to salute him with a thousand welcomes. Then he arose and entered Mansoul, he, and all his servants. The elders of Mansoul did also go dancing before him, till he came to the castle gates; and this was the manner of

his going up thither: he was clad in his golden armour, he rode in his golden chariot, the trumpets sounded about him, the colours were displayed, his ten thousands went up at

his feet, and the elders of Mansoul danced before him.

And now were the walls of the famous town of Mansoul

filled with the trampings of the inhabitants thereof, who

went up thither to view the approach of the blessed Prince

and his royal army. Also, the casements, windows, bal-

conies, and tops of the houses, were all now filled with

persons of all sorts, to behold how their town was to be

intelled with good.

Now when he was come so far into the town as to the

recorder's house, he commanded that one should go to

Captain Credence, to know whether the castle of Mansoul

was prepared to entertain his royal presence (for the pre-

paration of that was left to that Captain) and word was

brought that it was: Acts 15. 9. then was Captain Cre-

dence commanded also to come forth with his power to

meet the Prince, the which was, as he had commanded,

into one, and he conducted him into the castle. Eph 3. 17.

Thus done, the Prince that night did lodge in the castle

with his mighty Captains and men of war, to the joy of

the town of Mansoul.

Now the next care of the townsfolk was,

how the Captains and soldiers of the Prince's

army should be quartered among them, and

the care was not how they should shut their

houses of them, but how they should fill their

houses with them; for every man in Mansoul

now had that esteem of Emanuel and his

army, that nothing grieved them more, than

because they were not enlarged enough, eve-

ry one of them, to receive the whole army

of

*He enters  
the town  
of Mansoul  
and how.*

*The towns-  
men covet  
who shall  
have most of  
the soldiers  
that belong  
to the  
Prince.*



of the Prince, yea, they counted it their glory to be waiting upon them, and would, in those days, run at their bidding like lacquies. At last they came to this result.

1. That Captain Innocency should quarter *How they were* at Mr. Reason's  
*quartered in*  
*the town of*  
*Mansoul.*

2. That Captain Patience should quarter at Mr. Mind's. This Mr. Mind was formerly the Lord Willbewill's clerk in time of the rebellion.

3. It was ordered that Captain Charity should quarter at Mr. Affection's house.

4. That Captain Goodhope should quarter at my Lord Mayor's. Now for the house of the Recorder himself desired, because his house was next to the castle, and because from him it was ordered by the Prince, that, if need be, the alarm should be given to Mansoul; it was, I say, desired by him, that Captain Boanerges and Captain Conviction should take up their quarters with him, even they and all their men.

5. As for Captain Judgment and Captain Execution My Lord Willbewill took them and their men to him because he was to rule under the Prince for the good of the town of Mansoul now, as he had before under the tyrant Diabolus for the hurt and damage thereof.

6. And throughout the rest of the town were quartered Emanuel's forces, but Captain Credence, with his men abode still in the castle. So the Prince, his Captains, and his soldiers were lodged in the town of Mansoul.

Now the ancients and elders of the town of Mansoul thought that they never should have enough of the Prince Emanuel; his person, his actions, his words and behaviour, were so pleasing, so taking, so desireable to them. Wherefore they prayed him, that though the castle of Mansoul was his place of residence (and they desired that he might dwell there forever) yet that he would often visit the streets, houses and people of Mansoul; for, said they, 'Dread Sovereign thy presence, thy looks, thy smiles, thy words, are the life and strength, and sinews of the town of Mansoul.'

Besides this they craved, that they might have, without difficulty and interruption

*They have* have, without difficulty and interruption

continual access unto him, so for that very purpose, he commanded that the gates should stand open, that they might there in the manner of his doing, the fortifications of the place and the royal mansion house of the Prince.

When he spake, they all stopped their mouths, and gave audience: and when he talked it was their delight to imitate him in his goings.

Now upon a time Emanuel made a feast for the town of Mansoul, and upon the feasting day, the townsfolk were come to the castle to partake of his banquet. And he tasted them with all manner of outlandish food, food that grew not in the fields of Mansoul, nor in all the whole kingdom of Universe. It was food that came from his

father's court, and so there was dish after dish set before them, and they were commanded freely to eat. But still when a fresh dish was set before them, they would whisperingly say to each other, What is it? For they wist not what to call it. *Exod. 15. 16.* They drank

also of the water that was made wine, and were very merry with him. There was musick also all the while at the table, and man did eat angel's food, and had honey given them out of the rock: *Psal. 78. 24, 25.* So Mansoul did eat the food that was peculiar to the court, yea, they had now thereof to the full.

I must not forget to tell you, that as at this table there was musicians, so they were not those of the country, nor yet of the town of Mansoul, but they were the masters of the songs that were sung at the court of Shaddai.

Now after the feast was over, Emanuel was for entertaining the town of Mansoul with some curious riddles, of secrets drawn up by his father's secretary, by the skill and wisdom of Shaddai; the like to these there is not in any kingdom.

These riddles were made upon King Shaddai himself, and upon Emanuel his son, and upon his wars and doings with Mansoul.

Emanuel also expounded unto them some of these riddles himself; but oh, how they were lightened! they saw what they never saw, they could not have thought

that such rarities could have been couched in so few and such ordinary words. I told you before whom these riddles did concern; and as they were opened, the people did evidently see 'twas so, yea, they did gather that the things themselves were a kind of a portraiture, and that of Emanuel himself; for when they read in the scheme where the riddles were writ, and looked in the face of the Prince, things looked so like the one to the other, that Mansoul could not forbear but say, 'This is the lamb, this is the sacrifice, this is the rock, this is the red cow, this is the door, and this is the way; with a great many other things more.

And thus he dismissed the town of Mansoul. But can you imagine how the people of the corporation were taken

*The end of their banquet.* with this entertainment? Oh! They were transported with joy, they were drowned with wonderment, while they saw, and understood, and considered what their Emanuel

entertained them withal, and what mysteries he opened to them; and when they were at home in their houses, and in their most retired places, they could not but sing of him, and of his actions. Yea, so taking were the townsmen now with their Prince, that they would sing of him in their sleep.

*Mansoul must be new modelled.* Now it was in the heart of the Prince Emanuel to new model the town of Mansoul, and to put into such a condition as might be most pleasing to him, and that might best stand with the profit and security

of the now flourishing town of Mansoul. He provided also, against insurrections at home, and invasions from abroad; such love had he for the famous town of Mansoul.

*The instruments of war mounted. A nameless terrible instrument in Mansoul.* Wherefore, he first of all commanded that the great slings that were brought from his Father's court, when he came to the war of Mansoul, should be mounted some upon the battlements of the castle, some upon the towers, for there were towers in the town of Mansoul, towers new built by Emanuel, since he came thither. There was also an instrument invented by Emanuel, that to throw stones from the castle of Mansoul out at Mount-gate; an instrument that could not be resisted, nor

could



would miss of execution: wherefore, for the wonderful exploits that it did when used, it went without a name, and it was committed to the care of, and to be managed by the brave Captain, the Captain Credence, in case of war.

This done, Emanuel called the Lord Willbewill to him, and gave him in commandment to take care of the gates, the walls and towers in Mansoul; also, the Prince gave him the militia into his hand, and a special charge to withstand all insurrections and tumults that might be made in Mansoul against the peace of our Lord the King, and the peace and tranquility of the town of Mansoul. He also gave him in commission, that if he found any of the Diabolians lurking in any corner in the famous town of Mansoul, he should forthwith apprehend them, and slay them; or commit them to safe custody, that they may be proceeded against according to law.

*Willbewill promoted.*

Then he called unto him the Lord Understanding, who was the old Lord Mayor, he that was put out of place when Diabolus took the town, and put him into his former office again, and it became his place for his lifetime. He bid him also, that he should build him a palace near Eye-gate, and that he should build it in fashion like a tower for a defence. He bid him also, that he should read in the revelation of mysteries all the days of his life, that he might know how to perform his office aright.

*My Lord Mayor put into place.*

He also made Mr. Knowledge the Recorder, not of contempt to old Mr. Conscience, who had been Recorder before, but for that it was in his princely mind to confer upon Mr. Conscience another employ, of which he told the old gentleman he should know more hereafter.

*Mr. Knowledge made Recorder.*

Then he commanded that the image of Diabolus should be taken down from the place where it was set up, and that they should destroy it utterly, beating of it into powder, and casting it into the wind without the town-wall; and that the image of Shaddai, his father, should be set up again, with his

*The image of the own.*

*Prince and his Father set up a g in in Mansoul.* own, upon the castle gates; and that it should be more fairly drawn than ever; for as much as both his father and himself were come to Mansoul in more grace and mercy than heretofore: he would also, that his name should be fairly engraven upon the front of the town, and that it should be done in the best of gold; for the honour of the town of Mansoul.

*Some Diabolians committed to prison under the hand of Mr. Trueman the keeper.* After this was done, Emanuel gave out a commandment, that those three great Diabolians should be apprehended, namely, the two late Lord Mayors, to wit, Mr. Incrudulity, Mr. Lustings, and Mr. Forgetgood the Recorder. Besides these, there were some of them that Diabolus made burgeses and aldermen in Mansoul, that were committed to ward by the hand of the now valiant, and now right noble, the brave Lord Willbe- will.

And these were the their names, Alderman Atheism, Alderman Hardheart, and Alderman Falsepeace. The burgeses were Mr. Notruth, Mr. Pitiless, Mr. Haughty, with the like. These were committed to close custody, and the Jailor's name was Mr. Trueman; this Trueman was one of those that Emanuel brought with him from his Father's court, when at the first, he made a war upon Diabolus in the town of Mansoul.

*Diabolus's strong hold pulled down.* After this, the Prince gave a charge, that the three strong holds, that at the command of Diabolus, the Diabolians built in Mansoul should be demolished, and utterly pulled down; of which holds and their names, with their Captains and Governors, you read a little before. But this was long in doing, because of the largeness of the places, and because the stones, the timber, the iron, and all rubbish was to be carried without the town.

*A court to be called to try the Diabolians.* When this was done, the Prince gave order that the Lord Mayor and Aldermen of Mansoul should call a court of Judicature, for the trial and execution of the Diabolians in the corporation now under the charge of Mr. Trueman the Jailor.

Now

Now when the time was come, and the court set, commandment was sent to Mr. Trueman the Jailor, to bring the prisoners down to the bar. Then were the prisoners brought down pinioned, and chained together, as the custom of the town of Mansoul was. So when they were presented before the Lord Mayor, the Recorder, and the rest of the honourable Bench; first, the jury was impanelled, and then the witnesses sworn. The names of the jury were these, Mr. Belief, Mr. Trueheart, Mr. Upright, Mr. Hatebad, Mr. Lovegod, Mr. Seetruth, Mr. Heavenlymind, Mr. Moderate, Mr. Thankful, Mr. Goodwork, Mr. Zeal-for-god, and Mr. Humble.

*The prisoners brought to the bar.*

*The jury impanel'd and witnesses sworn.*

The names of the witnesses were Mr. Knowall, Mr. Telltrue, Mr. Hatelies, with my Lord Willbewill and his man, if need were.

So the prisoners were set to the bar; then said Mr. Doright (for he was the town clerk) set Atheism to the bar, Jailor. So he was set to the bar. Then said the clerk, Atheism, hold up thy hand: Thou art here indicted by the name of Atheism, an intruder upon the town of Mansoul, for that thou hast perniciously and dotishly taught and maintained that there is no God, and so no heed to be taken to religion. This thou hast done against the being, honour, and glory of the King, and against the peace and safety of the town of Mansoul. What sayest thou, art thou guilty of this indictment or not?

*Doright the clerk.*

*Atheism set to the bar.*

*His indictment.*

Atheism. Not guilty.

Crier. Call Mr. Knowall, Mr. Telltrue, and Mr. Hatelies into the court.

So they were called and came forth.

Clerk. You the witnesses for the King, look upon the prisoner at the bar. Do you know him?

Knowall. Yes, my Lord, we know him, his name is Atheism, he has been a very pestilent fellow for many years, in the miserable town of Mansoul.

Clerk. You are sure you know him?

Knowall. Know him? yes, my Lord; I have heretofore too often been in his company, to be at this time ignorant.



norant of him. He is a Diabolian, the son of a Diabolian, I knew his grandfather and his father.

Clerk. Well said, he standeth here indicted by the name of Atheism, &c. and is charged that he hath maintained and taught that there is no God, and so no heed need to be taken to any religion. What say you, the King's witnesse, to this, is he guilty or not?

Knowall. My Lord, I and he were once in Villain's lane together, and he, at that time, did briskly talk of divers opinions, and then and there I heard him say, that for his part, he did believe that there was no God; but, said he, I can profess one, and be as religious too, if the company I am in, and the circumstances of other things, said he, shall put me upon it.

Clerk. You are sure you heard him say thus?

Knowall. Upon mine oath I heard him say thus.

Clerk. Mr. Telltrue, what say you to the King's judges, touching the prisoner at the bar?

Telltruth. My Lord, I formerly was a great companion of his, for the which I now repent me, and I have often heard him say, and that with very great stomachfulness, that he believed there was neither God, Angel, nor Spirit.

Clerk. Where did you hear him say so?

Telltruth. In Blackmouth-lane, and in Blasphemy's-row, and in many other places besides.

Clerk. Have you much knowledge of him?

Telltruth. I know him to be a Diabolian the son of a Diabolian, and an horrible man to deny a deity; his father's name was Neverbegood, and he had more children than this Atheism. I have no more to say.

Clerk. Mr. Hatelies, look upon the prisoner at the bar: Do you know him?

Hatelies. My Lord, this Atheism is one of the vilest wretches that ever I came near, or had to do with, in my life. I have heard him say, that there is no God; that there is no world to come; no sin nor punishment hereafter: and moreover I have heard him say, that 'twas as good to go to a whore-house, as to go to hear a sermon.

Clerk. Where did you hear him say these things?

Hate-

Hatelies. In Drunkard's-row, just at Rascal-lane's end, at a house in which Mr. Impiety lived.

Clerk. Set him by Jailer, and set Mr. Lustings's, to the bar.  
Lustings set to the bar.

Mr. Lustings, Thou art here indicted by *His indictment.*  
the name of Lustings, an intruder upon the town of Mansoul, for that thou hast devilishly and traiterously taught, by practice and filthy words, that it is lawful and profitable to man, to give way to his carnal desires; and that thou, for my part, hast not, nor ever will deny thyself of any sinful delight, as long as thy name is Lustings. How sayest thou, art thou guilty of this indictment or not?

Lustings. My Lord I am a man of high birth, and have been used to pleasures and *His plea.*  
pastimes, and greatness: I have not been wont to be snubbed for my doings, but have been left to follow my will as if it were law. And it seems strange to me, that I should this day be called into question for that, that not only I, but almost all men, do either secretly or openly countenance, love and approve of.

Clerk. Sir, we concern not ourselves about thy greatness, though the higher the better you should have been; but we are concerned, and so are you now, about an indictment preferred against you. How say you, are you guilty of it or not?

Lustings. Not guilty.

Clerk. Crier, call upon the witnesses to stand forth, and give their evidence.

Crier. Gentleman, you the witnesses for the King, come and give in your evidence for our Lord the King, against the prisoner at the bar.

Clerk. Come Mr. Knowall, look upon the prisoner at the bar: Do you know him?

Knowall. Yes, my Lord, I know him.

Clerk. What's his name?

Knowall. His name is Lustings, he was the son of one Beattly, and his mother bare him in Flesh-street; she was one Evil-concupiscence's daughter. I knew all the generation of them.

Clerk. Well said, you have heard this indictment, what say you to it, is he guilty of the things charged against him or not?

Know-

Knowall. My Lord, he has, as he saith, been a great man indeed; and greater in wickedness than by pedigree more than a thousand fold.

Clerk. But what do you know of his particular actions, and especially with reference to his indictment?

Knowall. I know him to be a swearer, a liar, a Sabbath breaker; I know him to be a fornicator, and an unclean person; I know him to be guilty of abundance of evils. He has been, to my knowledge, a very filthy man.

Clerk. But what did he use to commit his wickedness, in some private corners, or more open and shamelessly?

Knowall. All the town over, my Lord.

Clerk. Come, Mr. Telltrue, what have you to say for our Lord the King, against the prisoner at the bar?

Telltrue. My Lord, all that the first witness has said, I know to be true, and a great deal more besides.

Clerk. Mr. Lustings, do you hear what these gentlemen say?

*His second play.* Lustings. I was ever of opinion that the happiest life that a man could live on earth, was to keep himself back from nothing that he desired in the world; nor have I been false at any time to this opinion of mine, but have lived in the love of my notions all my days. Nor was I ever so churlish, having found such sweetness in them myself, as to keep the commendations of them from others.

Then said the Court, There hath proceeded enough from his own mouth to lay him open to condemnation; wherefore set him by the Jailor, and set Mr. Incredulity to the bar.

Incredulity set to the bar.

*His indictment.* Clerk. Mr. Incredulity, thou art here indicted by the name of Incredulity, an intruder upon the town of Mansoul, for that thou hast feloniously and wickedly, and that

when thou wert an officer in the town of Mansoul; made head against the Captains of the great King Shaddai when they came and demanded possession of Mansoul; yea, thou didst bid defiance to the name, forces and cause of the King, and didst also, as did Diabolus thy Captain stir up and encourage the town of Mansoul to make



ed against, and resist the said force of the King. What sayest thou to this indictment, art thou guilty of it or not?

Then said Incredulity, I know not Shaddai *His plea.*  
I love my old prince, I thought it my duty  
to be true to my trust, and to do what I could to possess  
the minds of the men of Mansoul, to do their utmost to  
resist strangers and foreigners and with might to fight a-  
gainst them. Nor have I, nor shall I change mine opinion  
for fear of trouble, though you, at present, are possessed  
of place and power.

Then said the Court, the man as you see is incorrigible,  
he is for maintaining his villainies by stoutness of words,  
and his rebellion with impudent confidence. And there-  
fore set him by, Jailor, and let Mr. Forgetgood to the  
bar.

Forgetgood set to the bar.

Clerk. Mr. Forgetgood, Thou art indicted by the name  
of Forgetgood, an intruder upon the town of Mansoul,  
for that thou, when the whole affairs of the town of Man-  
soul were in thy hand, didst utterly forget to serve them  
in what was good, and didst fall in with the tyrant Dia-  
bolus against Shaddai the King, against his Captains and  
all his host, to the dishonour of Shaddai, the breach of his  
law, and the endangering of the destruction of the famous  
town of Mansoul. What sayest thou to this indictment,  
art thou guilty or not guilty?

Then said Mr. Forgetgood, Gentlemen, and  
at this time my judges; as to the indictment *His plea.*  
by which I stand accused, of several crimes,  
before you, pray attribute my forgetfulness to mine age,  
and not to my wilfulness; to the craziness of my brain,  
and not to the carelessness of my mind, and then I hope I  
may, by your charity, be excused from great punishment,  
though I be guilty.

Then said the Court. Forgetgood, Forgetgood, thy  
forgetfulness of good was not simply of frailty, but of  
purpose; and for that thou didst loath to keep virtuous  
things in thy mind. What was bad thou could'st retain,  
but what was good thou could'st not abide to think of  
thy age therefore, and thy pretended craziness, thou ma-  
kest use of to blind the court withal, and as a cloak to co-  
ver thy knavery. But let us hear what the witnesses have

to say for the King against the prisoner at the bar, is he guilty of this indictment or not?

Hate. My Lord, I have heard this Forgetgood say that he could never abide to think of goodness, no not for a quarter of an hour.

Clerk. Where did you hear him say so?

Hate. In Allbasse lane, at a house next door to the sign of the Conscience seared with an hot iron.

Clerk. Mr. Knowall, what can you say for our Lord the King against the prisoner at the bar?

Know. My Lord, I know this man well, he is a Diabolian, the son of a Diabolian; his father's name was Lovenought, and, for him, I have often heard him say that he counted the very thoughts of goodness the most burthenesome thing in the world.

Clerk. Where did you hear him say these words?

Know. In Flesh lane, right opposite to the church.

Then said the Clerk, Come Mr. Telltrue, give in your evidence concerning the prisoner at the bar, about that for which he stands here, as you see, indicted before this honourable court.

Tell. My Lord, I have heard him often say, he had rather think of the vilest thing, than of what is contained in the holy scriptures.

Clerk. Where did you hear him say these grievous words?

Tell. Where? in a great many places. Particularly in Nauseous street, in the house of one Mr. Shameless, and in Filth lane, at the sign of the Reprobate, next door to the Decent into the pit.

Court. Gentlemen, you have heard the indictment, his plea, and the testimony of the witnesses, Jailor, set Mr. Hardheart to the bar.

Hardheart set to the bar.

Clerk. Mr. Hardheart, thou art here indicted by the name of Hardheart, an intruder upon the town of Mansoul, for that thou didst, most desperately and wickedly, possess the town of Mansoul with impenitency and obdurateness, and didst keep them from remorse and sorrow for their evils, all the time of their apostasy from, and rebellion against, the blessed King Shaddai: what sayest thou to this indictment, art thou guilty or not guilty?

Hard.

Hard. My Lord, I never knew what remorse or sorrow meant in all my life; I am impenetrable, I care for no man; nor can I be pierced with men's griefs, their joys will not enter into my heart; whomsoever I mischief, whomsoever I wrong, to me it is music, when to others mourning.

Court. You see the man a right Diabolian, and has convicted himself. Set him by, Jailor, and set Mr. Falsepeace to the bar.

Falsepeace set to the bar.

Clerk. Mr. Falsepeace, thou art here indicted by the name of Falsepeace, an instrument upon the town of Mansoul, for that thou didst most wickedly and satanically bring, hold and keep the town of Mansoul, both in her apostasy, and in her hellish rebellion; in a false, groundless, and dangerous peace, and damnable security, to the dishonour of the King, the transgression of his law, and the great damage of the town of Mansoul. What sayest thou, art thou guilty of this indictment, or not?

Then said Mr. Falsepeace, Gentlemen, and you now appointed to be my judges, I acknowledge that my name is Mr. Peace, but that my name is Falsepeace I utterly deny. If your honours shall please to send for any that do intimately know me, or for the midwife that laid my mother of me, or for the gossips that was at my Christening, they will any, or all of them prove, that my name is not Falsepeace, but Peace. Wherefore I cannot plead to this indictment, for as

much as my name is not inserted therein, and as Peace is my true name, so also are my conditions. I was always a man that loved to live at quiet, and what I loved myself, that I thought others might like also. Wherefore when I saw any of my neighbours to labour under a disquieted mind, I endeavoured to help them what I could, and instances of this good temper of mine, many I can give.

First, When, at the beginning, our town of Mansoul did decline the ways of Shaddai, they, some of them, afterwards began to have disquieting reflections upon themselves for what they had done: but I as one troubled to see them dis-

*His indictment.*

*His plea.*

*He denies his name.*

*Pleads his goodness.*



quieted, presently sought out means to get them quiet again.

Secondly, When the ways of the old world and of Sodom were in fashion; if any thing happened to molest those that were for the customs of the present times, I laboured to make them quiet again, and to cause them to act without molestation.

Thirdly, To come nearer home, when the wars fell out between Shaddai and Diabolus, if at any time I saw any of the town of Mansoul afraid of Destruction, I often used, by some way, device, invention or otherwise, to labour to bring them to peace again.

Wherefore, since I have always been a man of so virtuous a temper, as some say a peace maker is; and if a peace maker be so deserving a man, as some have been bold to attest he is: then let me, gentlemen, be accounted by you, who have a great name for justice and equity in Mansoul, for a man that deserveth not this inhumane way of treatment, but liberty, and also a licence to seek damage of those that have been my accusers.

Then said the Clerk, Crier, make a proclamation.

Crier. O Yes, forasmuch as the prisoner at the bar hath denied his name, to be that which was mentioned in the indictment, the Court requireth, that if there be any in this place, that can give information to the Court, of the original and right name of the prisoner, they would come forth and give in their evidence, for the prisoner stands upon his own innocency.

*New witnesses come in against him.* Then came two into the Court, and desired that they might have leave to speak what they knew concerning the prisoner at the bar; the name of the one was Searchtruth, and the name of the other Vouchtruth: so the Court demanded of these men, if they knew the prisoner, and what they could say concerning him, for he stands, said they, upon his own vindication?

Then said Mr. Searchtruth, my Lord I.

Court. Hold, give him his oath, then they swear him. So he proceeded.

Search. My Lord, I know, and have known this man from a child, and can attest that his name is Falsepeace. I knew his father, his name was Mr. Flatterer, and his mother, before she was married, was called by the name of

Mrs.

Mrs. Soothup; and these two, when they came together, lived not long without this son, and when he was born, they called his name Falsepeace. I was his play-fellow, only I was somewhat older than he; and when his mother did use to call him home from his play, she used to say, Falsepeace, Falsepeace, come home quickly, or I'll fetch you. Yea, I knew him when he sucked, and though I was then but little, yet I can remember that when his mother did use to sit at the door with him, nor did play with him in her arms, she would call him twenty times together, my little Falsepeace, my pretty Falsepeace, and O my sweet rogue, Falsepeace; and again, O my little bird, Falsepeace; and how do I love my child! The gossips also knew it is thus, though he has had the face to deny it in open Court.

Then Mr. Vouchtruth was called upon, to speak what he knew of him. So they swore him.

Then said Mr. Vouchtruth; My Lord, all that the former witness hath said is true; his name is Falsepeace, the son of Mr. Flatterer, and of Mrs. Soothup his mother. And I have, in former times, seen him angry with those that have called him any thing else but Falsepeace, for he would say, that all such did mock and nick-name him; but this was in the time when Mr. Falsepeace was a great man, and when the Diabolians were the brave men in Mansoul.

Court. Gentlemen, you have heard what these two men have sworn against the prisoner at the bar: and now Mr. Falsepeace, to you; you have denied your name to be Falsepeace, yet you see that these honest men have sworn that this is your name. As to your plea, in that you are quit; besides the matter of your indictment you are not by it charged for evil doing, because you are a man of peace, or a peace-maker among your neighbours; but for that you did wickedly, and satanically bring, keep and hold the town of Mansoul, both under its apostasy from, and in its rebellion against its King, in a false, lying, and damnable peace, contrary to the law of Shaddai, and to the hazard of the destruction of the then miserable town of Mansoul. All that you have pleaded for yourself is, that you have denied your name, &c. but here you see witnesses, to prove that you are the man.

For the peace that thou so much boast of making among your neighbours, know that peace that is not a companion of truth and holiness, but that which is without this foundation, is grounded upon a lie, and is both deceitful and damnable; as also the great Shaddai hath said; thy plea therefore has not delivered thee from what by the indictment, thou art charged with, but rather it doth fasten all upon thee.

But thou shalt have very fair play; let us call the witnesses that are to testify, as to matter of fact, and see what they have to say for our Lord the King against the prisoner at the bar.

Clerk. Mr. Knowall, what say you for our Lord the King, against the prisoner at the bar?

Know. My Lord, this man hath for a long time made it, to my knowlede, his business to keep the town of Mansoul in a sinful quietness, in the midst of all her lewdness, filthiness and turmoils; and hath said, and that in my hearing, Come, come let us fly from all trouble, on what ground so ever it comes; and let us be for a quiet and peaceable life, though it wanteth a good foundation.

Clerk. Come Mr. Hatelies, what have you to say?

Hate. My Lord, I have heard him to say, that peace, though in a way of unrighteousness, is better than trouble with truth.

Clerk. Where did you hear him say this?

Hate. I heard him say it in Folly-yard, at the house of one Mr. Simple, next door to the sign of the Self-deceiver, Yea, he hath said this to my Knowledge twenty times in that place.

Clerk. We may spare further witnesses, this evidence is plain and full. Set him by, jaylor, and set Mr. Notruth to the bar.

Notruth set to the bar.

Clerk. Mr. Notruth, thou art here indicted by the name of Notruth, an intruder upon the town of Mansoul, for that thou hast always, to the dishonour of Shaddai, and the endangering of the utter ruin of the famous town of Mansoul, set thyself to deface, and utterly to spoil all the remainders of the law and image of Shaddai, that have been found in Mansoul, after her deep apostasy from her King

Diabolus,



Diabolus, the envious tyrant, 'What sayest thou art thou guilty of this indictment, or not?

No. Not guilty, my Lord.

*His plea.*

Then the witnesses were called, and Mr.

Knowall did first give in his evidence a-

*Witnesser.*

gainst him.

Know. My Lord, this man was at the pulling down of image of Shaddai; yea, this is he that did it with his own hands, I myself stood by and saw him do it, and he did it at the commandment of Diabolus. Yea, this Mr. Notruth did more than this, he did also set up the horned image of the beast Diabolus in the same place. This also is he, that at the bidding of Diabolus, did rent and tear, and cause to be consumed, all that he could of the remainders of the law of the King, even whatever he could lay his hands on in Mansoul.

Clerk. Who saw him do this besides yourself?

Hate. I did my Lord, and so did many more besides: for this was not done by stealth, or in a corner, but in the open view of all, yea, he chose himself to do it publickly, for he delighted in doing of it.

Clerk. Mr. Notruth, how could you have the face to plead not guilty, when you were so manifestly the doer of all this wickedness?

No. Sir, I thought I must say something, and as my name is, so I speak: I have been advantaged thereby before now, and did not know but by speaking notruth, I might have reaped the same benefit now.

Clerk. Set him by, Jaylor, and set Mr. Pitiless to the bar.

Pitiless set to the bar.

Mr. Pitiless, thou art here indicted by the name of Pitiless, an intruder upon the town of Mansoul, for that thou didst, most traitorously and wickedly, shut up all the bowels of compassion, and wouldest not suffer poor Mansoul to console her own misery, when she had apostatized from her rightful King, but didst evade, and at all times turn her mind away from those thoughts that had in them a tendency to lead her to repentance. What says thou to this indictment? Guilty, or not guilty?

Pitiless. Not guilty of Pitilessness: all I did was

to cheer up according to my name, for my

*His plea.*

*name*

name is not Pitiless, but cheer up: and I could not abide to see Mansoul incline to melancholy.

Clerk. How do you deny your name, and say it is not Pitiless but Cheer up: Call for the witnesses: what say you the witnesses to this plea?

Know. My Lord, his name is Pitiless; so he hath writ himself in all papers of concern, wherein he has had to do. But these Diabolians loves to counterfeit their names: Mr. Covetousness covers himself with the name of Good-husbandry, or the like: Mr. Pride can, when need is, call himself Mr. Neat, Mr. Handsome, or the like: and so of all the rest of them.

Clerk. Mr. Telltrue, what say you?

Tell. His name is Pitiless, my Lord I have known him from a child, and he hath done all that wickedness whereof he stands charged in the indictment; but there is a company of them that are not acquainted with the danger of damning, therefore they call all those melancholy that have seirous thoughts how that state should be thinned by them.

Clerk. Set him by, Jaylor, and set Mr. Haughty to the bar.

Mr. Haughty thou art here indicted by the *His indictment.* name of Haughty, an intruder upon the town of Mansoul, for that thou didst most traitorously and devilishly teach the town of Mansoul to carry it loftily and stoutly against the summons that was given them by the Captains of the King Shaddai: Thou didst also teach the town of Mansoul to speak contemptuously, and vilifying of their great King Shaddai, and didst moreover, encourage, both by words and examples, Mansoul to take up arms, both against the King and his son Emanuel. How sayest thou, art thou guilty of this indictment, or not?

Haugh. Gentlemen, I have always been a *His plea.* man of courage and valour, and have not fled when under the greatest clouds, to snail or hang down the head like a bulrush: nor did it at all any time please me to see men veil their bonnets to those that have opposed them: yea, though their adversaries seemed to have ten times the advantage of them.

I did not use to consider who was my foe, nor what the cause was in which I was engaged. It was enough to

me if I carried it bravely, fought like a man, and come off like a victor.

Court. Mr. Haughty, You are not here indicted for that you have been a valiant man, nor for your courage and stoutness in times of distress, but for that you have made of this your pretended valour to draw the town of Mansoul into acts of rebellion, both against the great King, and Emanuel his son. This is the crime, and the thing wherewith thou art charged in, and by the indictment. But he made no answer to that.

Now when the court had thus far proceeded against the prisoners at the bar, then they put them over to the verdict of their Jury, to whom they did apply themselves after this manner.

Gentlemen of the Jury, you have been here and have seen these men, you have heard their indictments, their pleas, and what the witnesses have testified against them: now what remains, is, that you do forthwith withdraw yourselves to some place, where, without confusion, you may consider of what verdict in a way of truth and righteousness, you ought to bring it in for the King against them, and so bring it in accordingly.

*The Court  
to the jury.*

Then the Jury, to wit, Mr. Belief, Mr. Trueheart, Mr. Upright, Mr. Hatebad, Mr. Lovegood, Mr. Seetruth, Mr. Heavenlymind, Mr. Moderate, Mr. Thankful, Mr. Humble, Mr. Goodwork, and Mr. Zeal for God, withdrew themselves in order to their work: now when they were shut up by themselves, they fell to discourse among themselves in order to the drawing up of their verdict.

*The Jury's  
charge.*

And thus Mr. Belief for he was the Foreman, began; Gentlemen, quoth he, for the men, the prisoners at the bar, for my part, I believe that they all deserve death. Very

*They with-  
drew them-  
selves.*

right, said Mr. Trueheart; I am wholly of your opinion; O what a mercy is it, said Mr. Hatebad, that such villians as these are apprehended! Ay, ay, said Mr. Lovegood, this is one of the joytullest days that ever I saw in my life. Then said Mr. Seetruth, I know that if we judge them to death, our verdict shall stand before Snaddai himself. Nor do I at all question it, said Mr. Heavenlymind: he said moreover, When all such beasts

*Their con-  
ference a-  
mong them-  
selves.*



as these are cast out of Mansoul, what a goodly town will it be then? Then said Mr. Moderate, it is not my manner to pass my judgment with rashness, but for these their crimes are so notorious, and the witnesses so palpable, that that man must be wilfully blind, who saith the prisoners ought not to die. Blessed be God, saith Mr. thankful, that the traitors are in safe custody. And I join with upon my bare knees, said Mr. Humble. I am glad also, said Mr. Goodwork. Then said the warman, and true-hearted Mr. Zealforge, cut them off, they have been the plague, and have sought the destruction of the soul.

Thus therefore being all agreed in their verdict, they came instantly to the court.

Clerk. Gentlemen of the Jury, answer all *They are agreed of their verdict, and bring them in guilty.* to your names: Mr. Belief, one; Mr. Trueheart, two; Mr. Upright, three; Mr. Hatebad, four; Mr. Lovegood, five; Mr. Seetruth, six; Mr. Heavenly-mind, seven; Mr. Moderate, eight; Mr. Thankful, nine; Mr. Humble, ten; Mr. Goodwork, eleven; and

Mr. Zealforge, twelve: good men and true, stand together in your verdict, Are you all agreed?

Jury. Yes, my Lord.

Clerk. Who shall speak for you?

Jury. Our Foreman.

Clerk. You the gentlemen of the Jury, being impanelled for our Lord the King, to serve here in a matter of life and death, have heard the trials of each of these men, the prisoners at the bar: what say you are they guilty of that, and those crimes for which they stand indicted, or are they not guilty?

*The Verdict.* Fore. Guilty, my Lord.

Clerk. Look to your prisoners, Jaylor.

This was done in the morning, and in the afternoon they received the sentence of death, according to the law.

The Jaylor therefore having received such a charge, put them all in the inward prison, to preserve them there till the day of execution, which was to be the next day in the morning.

But now see how it happened, one of the *Incredulity* prisoners, Incredulity by name, in the interim, betwixt the sentence and time of execution, brake prison, and made his escape, and

gets him away immediately out of the town of Mansoul, and lay lurking in such places and holes as he might avail he should again have opportunity to do the town of Mansoul mischief, for their thus handling of him as they did.

Now when Mr. Trueman the Jaylor perceived that he had lost his prisoner, he was in a heavy taking; because he, that prisoner we speak of, was the very worst of all the gang: wherefore first he goes and acquaints my Lord Mayor, Mr. Recorder, and my Lord Willbewill with the matter, and to get of them an order to make search for him throughout the town of Mansoul. So an order he got, and search was made, but no such man could now be found in all the town of Mansoul.

*No Incredulity in Mansoul.*

All that could be gathered was, that he had lurked a while about the outside of the town, and that here and there one or other had a glimpse of him, as he did make his escape out of Mansoul; one or two also did affirm, that they saw him without the town, going apace quite over the plain. Now when he was quite gone, it was affirmed that one Mr. Didsee, that he ranged all over dry places, till he met diabolus his friend, and where should they meet one another, but just upon Hellgate-hill.

*He is gone to Diabolus*

But Oh! what a lamentable story did the old gentleman tell to Diabolus, concerning what sad alteration Emanuel had made in Mansoul?

As first, how Mansoul had, after some delays, received a general pardon at the hands of Emanuel, and that they had invited him into the town, and that they had given him the castle for his possession. He said moreover, that they had called his soldiers into the town and coveted who should quarter the most of them: they also entertained him with the timbrel, song and dance. But that is, said Incredulity, that is the sorest vexation to me, that he hath pulled down O Father, thy image, and set up his own; pulled down thy officers, and set up his own. Yea, and Willbewill, that rebel, who one would have thought should never have turned from us, he is now in as great favour with Emanuel as he was with thee. But besides, all this

*He tells Diabolus what Emanuel now is doing in Mansoul.*

Will.

Willbewill has received a special commission from his master to search for, to apprehend, and to put to death again all, and all manner of Diabolians that he shall find in the prison of Mansoul: yea, and this Willbewill has taken and committed to prison already, eight of my Lords most true friends in Mansoul. Nay further, my Lord, with grief I speak it, they have been all arraigned, condemned, and executed, before this, are executed in Mansoul. I am now your lord of eight, and myself was the ninth, who should assuredly have drunk of the same cup, but that, through your craft, I as thou seest, have made mine escape from among them.

*Diabolus* When Diabolus had heard this lamentable story, he yelled, and snuffed up the wind like a dragon, and made the sky to look dark with his roaring: he also swore that he would try to be revenged on Mansoul for this. So both he and his old friend Incredulity, concluded to enter into great consultation, how they might get to the town of Mansoul again.

Now before this time the day was come, in which the prisoners in Mansoul were to be executed; so they were brought to the cross, and that by Mansoul, in most solemn manner: for the Prince said, that this should be done in the hand of the town of Mansoul, that I may see, said he, the forwardness of my now redeemed Mansoul, to keep my ward, and to do my commandments: and that I may bless Mansoul in doing this deed. Proof of sincerity pleases me well, let Mansoul therefore first lay their hands on these Diabolians to destroy them.

So the town of Mansoul flew them accordingly to the word of their Prince; but when the prisoners were brought to the cross to die, you can hardly believe what trouble and some work Mansoul had of it, to put the Diabolians to death (for the men knowing that they must die, and every one of them brave an implacable enmity in their hearts to Mansoul) what did they but took courage at the cross, and there resisted the men of the town of Mansoul. Wherefore the men of Mansoul were forced to call out for help to the Captain and men of war. Now the great Shadrach had a secretary in the town, and he was a great lover of the men of Mansoul, and he was at the place



Execution also; so he hearing the men of Mansoul cry  
 against the strugglings and unruliness  
 the prisoners, rose up from his place, and  
 come and put his hands upon the hands of  
 men of Mansoul. Rom. viii. 13. So cru-  
 ged the Diabolians that had been a plague, a grief, and  
 offence to the town of Mansoul.

*Execution  
 done.*

Now when this work was done, the Prince  
 down to see, to visit, and to speak  
 comfortably to the men of Mansoul, and to  
 strengthen their hands in such work. And  
 said to them, that by this act of theirs  
 had proved them, and found them to  
 win lovers of his person, observers of his laws, and such as  
 lost also respect to his honour. He said  
 moreover (to shew them, that they by this  
 should not be losers, nor their town weak-  
 ened by the loss of them) that he would  
 take them another Captain, and that one of  
 themselves. And that this Captain should  
 be the ruler of a thousand, for the good and benefit of the  
 now flourishing town of Mansoul.

*The Prince  
 comes down to  
 congratulate  
 them.*

*He promises  
 to make them  
 a new Cap-  
 tain.*

So he called one to him whose name was Waiting, and  
 bid him go quickly up to the Castle-gate,  
 and enquire for one Mr. Experience, that  
 waited upon that noble Captain, the Captain  
 of Medence, and bid him come hither to me.  
 Then the messenger that waited upon the good  
 Captain since Emanuel went, and said as he was  
 commanded. Now the youngest gentleman was waiting  
 to see the Captain train and muster his men in the castle-  
 ground. Then said Mr. Waiting, to him, Sir, the Prince  
 would that you should come down to his highness forth-  
 with. So he brought him down to Emanuel, and he came  
 and made obeisance before him. Now the men of the  
 town knew Mr. Experience well, for he was  
 born and bred in Mansoul: they also knew  
 him to be a man of conduct, of valour, and  
 a person prudent in matters; he was also a  
 brave person, well spoken, and very suc-  
 cessful in his undertakings.

*Experience  
 must be the  
 new Cap-  
 tain.*

*The qualifi-  
 cations of  
 their new  
 Captain.*

Wherefore the hearts of the townsmen  
 were transported with joy, when they saw  
 N that

*Mansoul  
 takes it well.*

that the Prince himself was so taken with Mr. Experience that he would needs make him Captain over a band of men.

So with one consent they bowed the knee before Emanuel, and with a shout said, 'Let Emanuel live for ever.'

*The thing told to Mr. Experience.* Then said the Prince to the young gentleman, whose name was Mr. Experience, 'I have thought good to confer upon thee a place of trust and honour, in this my town of Mansoul; then the young man bowed his head and worshipped. It is, said Emanuel, that thou shouldst be a Captain, a Captain over a thousand men in my beloved town of Mansoul. Then said the Captain, 'Let the King live.' So the Prince gave out orders forthwith to the King's Secretary, that he should draw up for Mr. Experience, a commission to make him a Captain over a thousand men; and let it be brought to me, said he, that I may set my seal. So it was done as it was commanded. The commission was drawn up, brought to Emanuel, and he set his seal thereto. Then by the hand of Mr. Waiting, he sent it away to the Captain.

Now so soon as the Captain had received his commission, he foundeth his trumpet for volunteers, and young men comes to him apace; yea, the greatest and chiefest men in the town sent their sons to be listed under his command. Thus Captain Experience came under command to Emanuel, for the good of the town of Mansoul. He had for his Lieutenant one Mr. Skilful, and for his cornet one Mr. Memory. His under officers I need not name.

*His commission sent him.* His colours were the white Colours for the town of Mansoul; and his scutcheon was the dead Lion, and the dead bear, 1 Sam. xvii. 36, 37. So the Prince returned to his royal palace again.

Now when he was returned thither, the elders of the town of Mansoul, to wit, the Lord Mayor, the Recorder and the Lord Willbewill, went to congratulate him, and in special way to thank him for his love, care and the tender compassion which he shewed to his ever obliged town of Mansoul. So after a while, and some sweet communion betwixt them, the townsmen having

*His under Officers.* His under officers I need not name.

His colours were the white Colours for the town of Mansoul; and his scutcheon was the dead Lion, and the dead bear, 1 Sam. xvii. 36, 37. So the Prince returned to his royal palace again.

Now when he was returned thither, the elders of the town of Mansoul, to wit, the Lord Mayor, the Recorder and the Lord Willbewill, went to congratulate him, and in special way to thank him for his love, care and the tender compassion which he shewed to his ever obliged town of Mansoul. So after a while, and some sweet communion betwixt them, the townsmen having

*The elders of Mansoul congratulate him.* His under officers I need not name.

His colours were the white Colours for the town of Mansoul; and his scutcheon was the dead Lion, and the dead bear, 1 Sam. xvii. 36, 37. So the Prince returned to his royal palace again.

ing solemnly ended their ceremony, returned to their place again.

Emanuel, also at this time appointed them a day wherein he would renew their charter; yea, wherein he would renew and enlarge it, mending several faults therein, that Mansoul's yoke might be yet more easy. Heb. viii. 13. And this he did without any desire of theirs, even of his own frankness, and noble mind. So when he had sent for and seen their old one, he laid it by, and said, 'Now that which decayeth and waxeth old is ready to vanish away.' Mat. xi. He said moreover, the town of Mansoul shall have another, a better, a new one, more steady and firm by far. An Epitome hereof take as follows.

"Emanuel, Prince of peace, and a great lover of the town of Mansoul, I do in the name of my Father, and of mine own clemency give, grant and bequeath to my beloved town of Mansoul.

*He renews  
their charter.*

"First, free, full, and everlasting forgiveness of all wrongs, injuries and offences done by them against my Father, Me their Neighbour, or themselves.

*An Epitome  
of their new  
charter.*

"Secondly, I do give them the holy law, and my Testament, with all that therein is contained, for their everlasting comfort and consolation.

*Heb. 8. 13.  
Joh. 17. 8,  
14.  
2 Pet. 1. 4.  
2 Cor. 7. 1.  
1 Joh. 1.  
16.*

"Thirdly, I do also give them a portion of the self same grace and goodness that dwells in my Father's heart and mine.

"Fourthly, I do give, grant and bestow upon them freely, the world, and what is therein, for their good; and they shall have that power over them, as shall stand with the honour of my Father, my glory, and their comfort; yea, I grant them the benefits of life and death, and of things present, and of things to come. This privilege no other city, town or corporation shall have, but my Mansoul only.

"Fifthly, I do give and grant them leave, and free access to me in my palace, at all seasons (to my palace above or below) there to make known their wants to me; and I give

*Heb. 10.  
19, 20.  
Mat. vii. 7.*



them moreover, a promise, that I will hear and redress all their grievances.

*No man to die for killing of sin.* Sixthly, I do give, grant to, and invest the town of Mansoul, with full power and authority, to seek out, take, inflame, and destroy all, and all manner of Diabolians, that at any time, from whence soever, shall be found fragling, in, or about the town of Mansoul.

*No lust has any grant by Christ, or any liberty to act in the town of Mansoul.* "Seventhly, I do further grant to my beloved town of Mansoul, that they shall have authority not to suffer any foreigner, or stranger, or their seed, to be free in, and of the blessed town of Mansoul, nor to share in the excellent privileges thereof. But that all the grants, privileges and immunities, that I bestow upon the famous town of Mansoul, shall be for those the old natives and true inhabitants thereof: Eph. iv. 22. to them I say, and to their right seed after them.

"But all Diabolians, of what sort, birth, country or kingdom soever, shall be debarred a share therein."

So when the town of Mansoul had received at the hand of Emanuel, their gracious charter, which, in itself is infinitely more large than by this lean Epitome is set before

*2 Cor. iii. 3.* you, they carried it to audience, that is, to the market place, and there Mr. Recorder *Jer. xxxi. 33.* read it in the presence of all the people. *Heb. viii. 10.* This being done, it was had back to the

*Their Charter set upon their castle-gates.* Castle gates, and there fairly ingraven upon the doors thereof, and laid in letters of gold, to the end, that the town of Mansoul, with all the people thereof, might have it always in their view, or might go where they might see what a blessed freedom their Prince had bestowed upon them that their joy might be increased in themselves and their love renewed to their great and good Emanuel.

*Joy renewed in Mansoul.* But what joy! what comfort! what consolation think you, did now possess the hearts of the men of Mansoul; the bells-ringed, the minstrels played, the people danced, the Captains shouted, the colours waved in the wind, and the silver trumpets sounded, and the Diabolians now

were

were glad to hide their heads, for they looked like them that had been long dead.

When this was over, the Prince sent again for the elders of the town of Mansoul, and communed with them about a ministry, that he intended to establish among them; such a ministry that might open unto them, and that might instruct them in the things that did concern their present and future state.

For said he, You, of yourselves without you have teachers and guides, wilt not be able to know, and if not to know, to be sure not to do the will of my father.

*Jer. x. 23.*

*1 Cor. ii. 14.*

At this news, when the elders of Mansoul brought it to the people, the whole town came running together, (for it pleased them very well, as whatever the Prince now did, pleased the people) and all, with one consent,

*The common good thoughts.*

implored his majesty, that he would forthwith establish such a ministry among them, as might teach them both law and judgment, statute and commandment; that they might be documented in all good and wholesome things. So he told them, that he would grant them their requests, and would establish two among them; one that was of his father's court, and one that was a native of Mansoul.

He that is from the Court, said he, is a person of no less quality and dignity than is my Father and I; and he is the Lord and chief Secretary of my Father's house, for he is, and always has been, the chief director of all my Father's laws, a person altogether well skilled in all mysteries, and knowledge of mysteries, as is my Father, or as myself is. Indeed he is one with us in nature, and also as to the loving of, and being faithful to, and in, the eternal concerns of the town of Mansoul.

And this is he, said the Prince, that must be your chief teacher; for 'tis he, and only he, that can teach you clearly in all high and supernatural things. He, and he only it is, that knows the ways and methods of my Father at court, nor can any like him shew how the heart of my father is at all times, in all things, and upon all occasions, towards Mansoul; for as no man knows the things of a man, but that spirit of a man, which is in him, so the things of my father knows no

*Jo. xiv. 26.*

*Ch. xv. 13.* man, but this his high and mighty secretary  
*1 Jo. ii. 27.* Nor can any, as he, tell Mansoul how and  
 what manner they shall take to keep them-  
 selves in the love of my father. He also it is that can bring  
 lost things to your remembrance, and that can tell you  
 things to come. This teacher therefore must, of necessity,  
 have the pre-eminence, both in your affections and judg-  
 ment, before your other teacher; his personal dignity,  
 the excellency of his teaching, also the great dexterity  
 that he hath, to help you to make and draw  
*1 Thes. i. 5,* up petitions to my father for your help,  
 6. and to his pleasing, must lay obligations  
 upon you to love him, fear him, and to  
 take heed that you grieve him not.

This person can but put life and vigour  
*Acts xxi. 10,* into all he says; yea, and can also put it  
 11. into your heart. This person can make seeds  
*Jud. v. 2.* of you and make you tell what shall be here-  
*Eph. vi. 18.* after. By this person you must frame all your  
*Rom. viii. 26.* petitions to my father and me; and without  
 his advice first obtained, let nothing enter in  
 to the town or castle of Mansoul, for that may disgust and  
 grieve this noble person.

Take heed, I say, that you do not grieve this minister  
 for if you do, he may fight against you;  
*Rev. ii. 7, 11,* and should he once be moved by you, to  
 17, 20. set himself against you in battle array, that  
*Eph. iv. 30.* will distress you more than if twelve legions  
*Isa. lxiii. 10.* should, from my fathers court, be sent to  
 make war upon you.

But, as I said, if you shall hearken unto him, and love  
 him; if you shall devote yourselves to his teaching, and  
 shall seek to have converse, and to maintain communion  
 with him, you shall find him ten times bet-  
 ter than is the whole world to any: yea,  
*1 Cor. xiii.* he will shed abroad the love of my father  
 14. in your hearts, and Mansoul will be the  
*Rom. v. 5.* wisest and most blessed of all people.

*Conscience  
 made a mi-  
 nister.*

Then did the Prince call unto him the  
 old gentleman, who afore had been the  
 Recorder of Mansoul, Mr. Conscience by  
 name, and told him, that for as much as he  
 was well skilled in the law and government of the town

of Man  
 sently  
 and do  
 also ma  
 town  
 of the  
 Prince  
 to civil  
 not att  
 those h  
 are ke  
 those t  
 my fat  
 Tho  
 Lord  
 thou h  
 porati  
 Wh  
 made  
 anso  
 know  
 his sel  
 Tho  
 thing  
 ledge  
 this p  
 dersta  
 low a  
 that  
 ing, a  
 with  
 I h  
 such  
 befor  
 them  
 with  
 not v  
 A  
 and,  
 there  
 whe  
 and  
 grap  
 thu  
 of  
 all f



of Mansoul, and was also well spoken, and could pertinently deliver to them his master's will, in all terrene and domestick matters, therefore he would *His limits* also make a minister for, and in the goodly town of Mansoul, in all the laws, statutes and judgments of the famous town of Mansoul. And thou must said the Prince, confine thyself to the teaching of moral virtues, to civil and natural duties; but thou must not attempt to presume to be a revealer of *His caution.* those high and supernatural mysteries that are kept close in the bosom of Shaddai my father: For those things know no man, nor can any reveal them but my father's secretary only.

Thou art a native of the town of Mansoul, but the Lord Secretary is a native with my father, wherefore as thou hast knowledge of the laws and customs of the corporation, so he, of the things and will of my father.

Wherefore, Oh! Mr. Conscience, although I have made thee a minister, and a preacher of the town of Mansoul, yet as to the things which the Lord Secretary knoweth, and shall teach to his people, there thou must be his scholer, and a learner, even as the rest of Mansoul are.

Thou must therefore in all high and supernatural things, go to him for information and knowledge: for though there be a spirit in man, *Joh 33. 8.* this person's inspiration must give him understanding. Wherefore, O! thou Mr. Recorder, keep low and be humble, and remember that the Diabolians that keep not their first charge, but left their own standing, are now made prisoners in the pit; be then content with thy station.

I have made thee my father's vicegerent on earth, in such things, of which I have made mention before: and thou, take thou power to teach *His power* them to Mansoul; yea, and to impose them *in Mansoul.* with whips and chastisements, if they shall not willingly hearken to do thy commandments.

And Mr. Recorder, because thou art old, and, through many abuses, made feeble; *His liberty.* therefore I give thee leave and licence to go *Body.* when thou wilt to my fountain, my conduit *Heb. 9. 14.* and there to drink freely of the blood of my grape, for my conduit doth always run wine. Thus doing, thou shalt drive from thy heart and stomach, all foul, gross, and hurtful humours. It will also lighten

thine eyes, and will strengthen thy memory for the reception and keeping of all that the King's most noble Secretary teacheth.

When the Prince had thus put Mr. Recorder (that once so was) into the place and office of a minister to Mansoul, and the man had thankfully accepted thereof; then did Emanuel address himself in a particular speech to the towns-men themselves.

*The Prince's speech to Mansoul.* "Behold (said the Prince to Mansoul) my love and care towards you, I have added to all that is past, this mercy, to appoint you preachers: the most noble Secretary to teach you in all high and sublime mysteries? and this gentleman, pointing to Mr. Conscience, is to teach you in all things human and domestic, for therein lieth his work. He is not, by what I have said, debarred of telling to Mansoul any thing that he hath heard and received at the mouth of the Lord high Secretary; only he shall not attempt to presume to pretend to be a revealer of those high mysteries himself; for the breaking of them up, and the discovery of them to Mansoul, lieth only in the power, authority, and skill of the Lord high Secretary himself. Talk of them he may, and so may the rest of the town of Mansoul; yea, and may, as occasion gives them opportunity, press them upon each other, for the benefit of the whole. These things therefore I would have you observe and do, for it is for your life, and the lengthening of your days.

*A world to come promised to Mansoul.* "And one thing more to my beloved Mr. Recorder, and to all the town of Mansoul; you must not dwell in, nor stay upon any thing that which he hath in commission to teach you, as to your trust and expectation of the next world; of the next world I say, for I purpose to give another to Mansoul, when this with them is worn out, but for that you must wholly and solely have recourse to, and make stay upon his doctrine, that is your teacher after the first order: Yea, Mr. Recorder himself must not look for life from that which he himself revealed, his dependance for that must be founded in the doctrine of the other preacher. Let Mr. Recorder also take heed, that he receive not any doctrine, or point of doctrine, that are not communicated to him by his su-

superior teacher, nor yet within the precincts of his own formal knowledge."

Now after the Prince had thus settled things in the famous town of Mansoul, he proceeded to give to the elders of the corporation a necessary caution, to wit, how they should carry it to the high and noble Captains that he had, from his father's court, sent or brought with him to the famous town of Mansoul.

*He gives them caution about the Captains.*

"These Captains, said he, do love the town of Mansoul, and they are picked men, picked out of abundance, as men that best suit, and that will most faithfully serve in the wars of Shaddai against the Diabolians for the preservation of the town of Mansoul. I charge you therefore, said he, O ye inhabitants of the now flourishing town of Mansoul, that you carry it not ruggedly or untowardly to my Captains, or their men; since as I said, their are pick't and chosen men, men chosen out of many, for the good of the town of Mansoul. I say, I charge you that you carry it not untowardly to them; for though they have the hearts and faces of lions, when at any time they shall be called forth to engage and fight with the King's foes, and the enemies of the town of Mansoul; yet a little discountenance cast upon them from the town of Mansoul, will deject and cast down their faces, will weaken and take away their courage. Do not therefore, O, my beloved! carry it unkindly to my valiant Captains, and courageous men of war, but love them, nourish them, succour them, and lay them in your bosoms, and they will not only fight for you, but cause to fly from you all those Diabolians that seek, and will, if possible, be your utter destruction.

*Graces picked from common virtues.*

*Satan cannot weaken our graces as we ourselves may.*

*Words.*

"If therefore any of them should, at any time, be sick or weak, and so not able to perform that office of love, which, with all their hearts, they are willing to do, and will do also, when well and in health, slight them not, nor despise them, but rather strengthen them, and encourage them, though weak and ready to die; for they are your



your fence and your guard, your walls, your gates, your locks, and your bars. And although when they are weak they can do but little, but rather need to be helped by you, than that you should then expect good things from them; yet, when well, you know what exploits, what feats, and warlike atchievements they are able to do, and will perform for you.

“ Besides, if they be weak, the town of Mansoul cannot be strong; if they be strong, then Mansoul cannot be weak; your safety therefore doth lie in their health and in your countenancing of them. Remember also, that if they be sick, they catch that disease of the town of Mansoul itself.

“ These things I have said unto you, because I love your welfare and your honour: observe therefore, O my Mansoul, to be punctual in all things that I have given in charge unto you, and that not only as a town corporate, and so to your officers and guard, and guides in chief, but to you, as you are a people whose well being, as single persons, depends on the observation of the orders and commanders of their Lord.

*A caution about the Diabolians that yet remain in Mansoul.* “ Next, Oh, my Mansoul! I do warn you of that, of which (notwithstanding that reformation that at present is wrought among you) you have need to be warned about: wherefore, hearken diligently unto me. I am now sure, and you will know hereafter, that there are yet of the Diabolians remaining in the town of Mansoul; Diabolians that are sturdy and implacable, and that do already while I am with you, and that will yet more when I am from you, study, plot, contrive, invent, and jointly attempt to bring you to desolation, and so to a state far worse than that of the Egyptian bondage; they are the avowed friends of Diabolus, therefore

*Mark 7.* lodge with their Prince in the castle, when incredulity was the Lord Mayor of this town; but since my coming hither, they lie more

*Rem. 7.* the outsidés and walls, and have made themselves dens, and caves, and holes, and strong holds therein. Wherefore, O Mansoul! thy

*Christ would not have us.* work, as to this, will be so much the more difficult and hard; that is, to take, mortify,

and

and put them to death, according to the will of my father. Nor can you utterly rid yourselves of them, unless you should pull down the walls of your town, the which I can by no means willing you should. Do

you ask me what shall we do then? Why, be you diligent, and quit you like men, observe their holds, find out their haunts, assault them, and make no peace with them. Wherever they haunt, lurk, or abide, and what terms of peace soever they offer you, abhor, and all shall be well betwixt you and me. And that you may the better know them from those that are the natives of Mansoul, I will give you this brief schedule of the names of

chief of them; and they are these that follow; The Lord Fornication, the Lord Adultery, the Lord Murder, the Lord Anger, the Lord Lasciviousness, the Lord Deceit, the Lord Evileye, Mr. Drunkenness,

Mr. Revelling, Mr. Idolatry, Mr. Witchcraft, Mr. Vengeance, Mr. Emulation, Mr. Wrath, Mr. Strife, Mr. Sedition, and Mr. Heresy. These are some of the chief, O Mansoul! of those that will seek to overthrow thee forever: These, I say, are the sculkers in Mansoul, but look thou well into the law of thy King, and there thou shalt find their physiognomy, and such other characteristic notes of them, by which they certainly may be known.

“These, O my Mansoul, (and I would gladly that you should certainly know it) if they be suffered to run and range about the town as they would, will quickly like vipers, eat out your bowels, yea, poison your Captains, cut the sinews of your soldiers, break the bars and bolts of your gates, and turn your now most flourishing Mansoul into a barren and desolate wilderness, and ruinous heap. Wherefore, that you may take courage to yourselves to apprehend these villains wherever you find them. I give you, my Lord Mayor, my Lord Willbewill, and Mr. Recorder, with all the inhabitants of the town of Mansoul, full power and commission to seek out to take, and cause to be put to death by the cross, all, and all manner of Diabolians, when and wherever you shall find them to lurk within, or to range without, the walls of the town of Mansoul.

*The names of some Diabolians in Mansoul.*

*A commission to destroy the Diabolians in Mansoul.*

“I told

"I told you before, that I had placed a standing ministry among you, not that you have but these with you for my four first Captains, who came again the master and Lord of the Diabolians that was in Mansoul they can, and, if need be, if they be required, will not only privately inform, but publickly preach to the corporation both good and wholesome doctrine, and such as shall lead you in the way; yea, they will set up a weekly, yea, if need be, a daily lecture in thee, Oh Mansoul! and will instruct thee in such profitable lessons, that, if needed, will do thee good at the end. And take good heed that you spare not the men that you have a commission to take and crucify.

"Now as I have set out before your eyes the vagrants and runagates by name, so I will tell you that among yourselves, some of them shall creep in to beguile you, even such as would seem, and that in appearance are, very wise, and hot for religion. And they, if you watch not, will do you a mischief, such an one as at present you cannot think of.

"These, as I said, will shew themselves to you in another hue than those under the description before. Wherefore Mansoul, watch and be sober, and suffer not thyself to be betrayed."

When the Prince had thus far modelled the town of Mansoul, and had instructed them in such matters as were profitable for them to know; then he appointed another day, in which he intended, when the townsfolk came together, to bestow a further badge of honour upon the town of Mansoul; a badge that should distinguish them from all the people, kindred and tongues, that dwell in the kingdom of Universe. Now it was not long before the day appointed was come, and the Prince and his people met in the King's palace, where first Emanuel made a short speech unto them, and then did for them as he had said, and unto them as he had promised.

"My Mansoul, (said he) that which I now am about to do, is to make you known to the world to be mine; and to distinguish you also in your own eyes, from all false traitors that may creep in among you."

Then



Then he commanded that those that waited upon him should go and bring forth, out of his treasury, those white and glittering robes that *White robes.* said he, have provided and laid up in store for my Mansoul. So the white garments were fetched out of his treasury, and laid forth to the eyes of the people. Rev. xix. 8. Moreover it was granted to them that they should take them and put them on according, said he, to your size and stature. So the people were put into white, into fine linen, white and clean.

Then said the prince unto them, 'This, O Mansoul, is my livery, and the badge by which mine are known from the servants of others. Yea, it is that which I grant to all that are mine, and without which no man is permitted to see my face. Wear them therefore for my sake, who gave them unto you, and also if you would be known by the world to be mine.'

But now can you think how Mansoul shone? It was fair as the sun, clear as the moon, and terrible as an army with banners.

The Prince added further, and said, 'No *That which* Prince, potentate, or mighty one of Universe, giveth this livery but myself; behold *distinguisheth* Mansoul *from other* therefore, as I said before, you shall be *people.* known by it to be mine.

'And now, said he, I have given you my livery, let me give you also in commandment concerning them; and be sure that you take good heed to my words.

'First, Wear them daily, day by day, lest, you should at some times, appear to others as if you were none of mine. Eccl. xi. 8.

'Secondly, Keep them always white, for if they be soiled, 'tis dishonour to me. Rev. iii. 2.

'Thirdly, Wherefore gird them up from the ground, and let them not clag with dust and dirt.

'Fourthly, Take heed that you lose them not, lest you walk naked, and they see your shame. Rev. vii. 15, 16, 17.

'Fifthly, But if you should sully them, if you should defile them, the which I am greatly unwilling you should, and the Prince Diabolus will be glad if you would, then speed you to do that which is written in my law, that yet you may stand and not fall before me and my throne.

Also, this is the way to cause that I may not leave you nor forsake you while here, but may dwell in the town of Mansoul for ever.' Luke xxi. 36.

And now was Mansoul, and the inhabitants of it, the signet upon Emanuel's right hand: where was there now a town, a city, a corporation, that could compare with Mansoul? a town that is redeemed

*The glorious  
state of Man-  
soul.*

from the wicked hand and from the power of Diabolus! a town that the King Shaddai loved, and that he sent Emanuel to reign from the Prince of the infernal cave; yea, a town that Emanuel loved to dwell in, and that he chose for his royal habitation; a town that he forfeited for himself, and made strong by the force of his army. What shall I say, Mansoul has now a most excellent Prince, golden Captains, and men of war, weapons proved, and garments as white as snow: nor are these benefits to be counted little but great; and can the town of Mansoul esteem them so, and improve them to that end and purpose for which they were bestowed upon them.

When the Prince had thus compleated the modelling of the town, to shew that he had great delight in the work of his hands, and took pleasure in the good that he had wrought for the famous and flourishing Mansoul, he commanded, and they set his standard upon the battlements of the castle. And then,

First, He gave them frequent visits, not a day now but the elders of Mansoul must come to him, or he to them, into his palace. Now they must walk and talk together of all the great things that he had done; and yet further promised to do for the town of Mansoul. Thus would he

often do with the Lord Mayor, my Lord Willbewill, and the honest subbordinate preacher, Mr. Conscience, and Mr. Recorder. But, Oh! how graciously, how lovingly! how courteously! and tenderly, did this blessed Prince now carry it towards the town of Mansoul! in all the streets, gardens, orchards, and other places where he came, to be sure the poor should have his blessing and benediction; yea, he would kiss them, and if they were ill he would lay hands on them and make them well. The Captains also he would daily, yea, sometimes hourly,

*Hungry  
thoughts.*

encourage

courage with his presence and goodly words. For you must know, that a smile from him upon them, would put more vigour, life and stoutness into them, than any thing else under heaven.

The Prince would now also feast them, and be with them continually; hardly a week would pass, but a banquet must be had betwixt him and them. You may remember, that some pages before we made mention of one feast that they had together, but now to feast them was a thing more common, every day with Mansoul was a feast day now. Nor did he, when they returned to their places, send them empty away; either they must have a ring, a gold chain, a bracelet, a white stone, or some thing; so dear was Mansoul to him now; so lovely was Mansoul in his eyes.

Secondly. When the elders and townsmen did not come to him, he would send in much plenty of provision unto them; meat that came from court, wine and bread that were prepared for his father's table; yea, such delicacies would he send unto them, and therewith would so cover their table, that whoever saw it, confessed that the like could not be seen in any kingdom.

Thirdly, If Mansoul did not frequently visit him as he desired they should, he would walk out to them, knock at their doors, and desire entrance, that amity might be maintained betwixt them and him; if they did hear and open to him, as commonly they would, if they were at home, then would he renew his former love, and confirm it too, with some new tokens and signs of continued favour.

And was it not now amazing to behold, that in that very place where sometimes Diabolus had his abode, and entertained his Diabolians to the almost utter destruction of Mansoul, the Prince of Princes should sit eating and drinking with them, where all his mighty Captains, men of war, trumpeters, with the singing men and singing women of his father, stood round about to wait upon them. Now did Mansoul's cup run over, now did her conduits run sweet wine, now did she eat the finest of the

*A token of Marriage.*

*A token of honour. A token of beauty. A token of pardon.*

*The danger of wandering thoughts.*

*Mansoul's glory.*



wheat, and drink milk and honey out of the rock ; no she said, how great is his goodness ! for since I found your favour in his eyes, how honourable have I been !

The blessed Prince did also ordain a Col. 3. 15. officer in the town, and a goodly person. His name was Mr. Godispeace ; this man was set over my Lord Willbewill, my Lord Mayor, Recorder, the subordinate Preacher, Mr. Mind, and over all the natives of the town of Mansoul. Himself

Rom. 15. self was not a native of it, but came with the Prince Emanuel from the Court. He was

13. a great acquaintance of Captain Credence and Captain Goodhope ; some say they were kin, and I am of that opinion too. This man, as I said, was made governor of the town in general, especially over the castle, and Captain Credence was to help him there. And I made great observations of it, that so long as all things went in Mansoul, as this sweetnatured gentleman would, the town was in a most happy condition. Now there were no jars, no chiding, no interfering, no unfaithful doings in all the town of Mansoul ; every man in Mansoul kept close to his own employment. The gentry, the officers,

Holy con- the soldiers, and all in the place observed their ceptions. order. And as for the women and children of the town, they followed their business joy- Good thought. fully, they would work and sing from morning till night ; so that quite through the town of Mansoul now, nothing was to be found but harmony, quietness, joy and health. And this lasted all that summer.

The story of Mr. Carnal Security. But there was a man in the town of Mansoul, and his name was Mr. Carnal Security, this man did, after all this mercy bestowed on this corporation, bring the town of Mansoul into a great and grievous slavery and bondage. A brief account of him and of his doings take as followeth.

When Diabolus at first took possession of the town of Mansoul, he brought thither with him a great number of Diabolians, men of his own condition. Now among this number there was one whose name was Mr. Selfconceit, and a notable brisk man he was as any that, in those days, possessed

possess the town of Mansoul. Diabolus then perceiving this man to be active and bold, sent him upon many desperate designs, the which he managed better, and more to the pleasing of his Lord, than most that came with him from the dens could do. Wherefore finding of him so fit for his purpose, he preferred him, and made him next to the great Lord Willbewill, of whom we have written so much before. Now the Lord Willbewill being in those days very well pleased with him, and with his achievements, gave him his daughter the Lady Fairnothing to wife. Now of my Lady Fairnothing, did this Mr. Selfconceit beget this gentleman Mr. Carnal Security. Wherefore there being then in Mansoul those strange kind of mixtures, 'was hard for them in some cases to find out who were natives, who not; for Mr. Carnal Security sprang from my Lord Willbewill by mother's side, though he had for his father a Diabolian by nature.

Well, this Carnal Security, took much after his father and mother, he was Selfconceited, he feared nothing, he was also a very busy man; nothing of news, nothing of doctrine, nothing of alteration, or talk of alteration, could at any time be on foot in Mansoul, but be sure Mr. Carnal Security would be at the head or tail of it; but to be sure he would decline those that he deemed the weakest, and stood always with them (in his way of standing) that he supposed was the strongest side.

Now when Shaddai the mighty, and Emanuel his son, made war upon Mansoul to take it, this Mr. Carnal Security was then in the town, and was a great doer among the people, encouraging them in their rebellion, putting of them upon hardning of themselves in their resisting of the King's forces; but when he saw that the town of Mansoul was taken and converted to the use of the glorious Prince Emanuel; and when he saw what was become of Diabolus, and how he was unrooted, and made to quit the castle in the greatest contempt and scorn, and that the town of Mansoul was well lined with Captains, engines of war, and men, and also provision, what doth he, but sily wheels about also; as he had served Diabolus

*His qualities.*

*He is always for the strongest side.*

against the good Prince, so he feigned that he would serve the Prince against his foes.

And having got some little smattering of Emanuel's things by the end, being bold, he ventures himself into

the company of the townsmen, and attempts

alto to cheat among them. Now he knew that the power and strength of Mansoul was great,

and that it could not but be pleasing to the people, if he cried up their might and glory.

Wherefore he beginneth his tale with the power and strength of Mansoul, and affirmed that it was impregnable. Now many

glorifying their Captains, and their sings, and their raiment, then crying up their fortifications and strong holds; and

lastly, the assurances that they had from their Prince, that Mansoul should be happy forever. But when he saw that

some of the men of the town were tickled, and taken with his discourse, he makes it his business, and walking from

street to street, house to house, and man to man, he at last brought Mansoul to dance after his pipe, and to grow almost

as Carnally Secure as himself; so from talking they went to feasting, and from feasting to sporting, and so to some other matters; now Emanuel was yet in the town

of Mansoul, and he wisely observed his doings. My Lord Mayor, my Lord Willbe-

will, and Mr. Recorder, who were all taken with the words of this talking Diabolian

gentleman, forgetting that their Prince had given them warning before, to take heed

that they were not beguiled with any Diabolian flight: he had further told him, that

the security of the now flourishing town of Mansoul, did not so much lie in her present fortifications and force, as

in her so using of what she had, as might oblige her Emanuel to abide within her castle. For the right doctrine

of Emanuel was, that the town of Mansoul should take heed that they forgot not his fathers love and his; also,

that they should demean themselves, as to continue to keep themselves therein. Now this was not the way to

coit, namely, to fall in love with one of the Diabolians, and with such an one too as Mr. Carnal Security

was, and to be led up and down by the nose by him: they

should

*How Mr. Carnal Security begins the misery of Mansoul.*

*'Tis not grace received, but grace improved, that preserves the soul from temporal dangers.*



should have heard their Prince, feared their prince, loved their Prince, and have stoned this naughty pack to death; and took care to have walked in the ways of their Prince's prescribing, for then should their peace have been as a river, when their righteousness had been like the waves of the sea.

Now when Emanuel perceived that, through the policy of Mr. Carnal Security, the hearts of the men of Mansoul were chilled and abated in their practical love to him.

First, He bemoans them, and consoles their state with the secretary, saying, "Oh *Emanuel* that my people had hearkened unto me, *bemoans* and that Mansoul had walked in my ways! *Mansoul.* I would have fed them with the finest of the wheat, and with honey out of the rocks would I have sustained them." This done, he said in his heart, "I will

return to the court, and go to my place till Mansoul shall consider and acknowledge their offence;" and he did so, and the cause and manner of his going from them was thus:

The cause was for that,

First, Mansoul declined him, as is manifest in these particulars.

1. They left off their former way of visiting him, they came not to his royal palace as *The way of Mansoul's backsliding.* afore.

2. They did not regard, nor yet take notice that he came, or came not to visit them.

3. The love feasts that had wont to be betwixt their Prince and them, though he made them still, and called them to them, yet they neglected to come to them, or to be delighted with them.

4. They waited not for his counsels, but began to be headstrong and confident in themselves, concluding, that now they were strong and invincible, and that Mansoul was secure, and beyond all reach of the foe, and that her state must needs be unalterable for ever.

Now, as was said, Emanuel perceiving that by the craft of Mr. Carnal Security, the town of Mansoul was taken off from their dependance upon him, and upon his father by him, and set upon what by them was bestowed upon him; he first, as I said, bemoaned their state, then he used means to make them understand that the way that they

they went on in was dangerous; for he sent my Lord high secretary to him, to forbid him such ways; twice when he came to them, he found them at dinner

*They grieve  
the Holy  
Ghost and  
Christ.*

Mr. Carnal Security's parlour; and perceiving also, that they were not willing to reason about matters concerning their good, he took grief and went his way. The while when he had told to the Prince Emanuel, he took offence, and was grieved also, and made provision to return to his father's court.

Now the methods of his withdrawn, as I was saying before, were thus.

1. Even while he was yet with them, Mansoul he kept himself close, and more retired than formerly.

*Christ withdraws not  
all at once.*

2. His speech was not now (if he came in their company) so pleasant and familiar as formerly.

3. Nor did he, as in times past, send to Mansoul from his table, those dainty bits which he was wont to do.

4. Nor when they came to visit him, as now and then they would, would he be so easily spoken with as they found him to be in times past. They might now knock once, yea, twice, but he would seem not at all to regard them; whereas formerly, at the sound of their feet, he would up and run, and meet them half way, and take them too, and lay them in his bosom.

But this Emanuel carried it now, and by this his carriage, he sought to make them bethink themselves and return to him. But alas! they did not consider; they did not know his ways, they regarded not, they were not touched with these, nor with the true re-

*He is gone.* remembrance of former favours. Wherefore what does he, but in private manner withdraws himself, first from his palace, then to the gate of the town, and so away from Mansoul he goes, till they should acknowledge their offence, and more earnestly seek his face. Mr. Godpeace also laid down his commission, and would for the present, act no longer in the town of Mansoul.

Thus they walked contrary to him, and he again by way of retaliation, walked contrary to them. But alas! by this time they were so hardened in their way, and had

drunk in the doctrine of Mr. Carnal security, that the departing of their Prince touched them not, nor was he remembered by them when gone; and so, of consequence his absence not condoled by them.

Now there was a day wherein this old gentleman Mr. Carnal security, did again make a feast for the town of Mansoul, and there was at that time in the town, one Mr. Godlyfear; one now but little set by, though one of great request. This man, old Carnal Security had a mind, if possible, to gull and debauch, and abuse as he did the rest, and therefore he now bids him to the feast with his neighbours; so the day being come, they prepare, and he goes and appears with the rest of the guests: and being all set at the table, they did eat and drink, and were merry, even all but this one man, Mr. Godlyfear sat like a stranger, and did neither eat nor was merry; the which when Mr. Carnal Security perceived, he presently address himself in a speech thus to him.

Carn. Mr. Godlyfear, are you not well? You seem to be ill of body or mind, or both: I have a cordial of Mr. Forgetgood's making, the which, Sir, if you will take a dram of I hope it may make you bonny and blith, and so make you more fit for we feasting companions.

Unto whom the good old gentleman discreetly replied, Sir, I thank you for all things courteously and civilly, but for your cordial, I have no lust thereto. But a word to the natives of Mansoul.

"You the elders and chief of Mansoul, to me it is strange, to see you so jocund and merry, when the town of Mansoul is in such woful case."

Carn. You want sleep, Sir, I doubt. If you please lie down and take a nap, and the mean while we'll be merry.

Godly. Sir, If you were not destitute of an honest heart, you could not do as you have done and do.

Carn. Why?

Godly. Nay pray interrupt me not. It is true the town of Mansoul was strong, and (with a proviso) impregnable; but you, the townsmen, have weakned it, and it now lies.



lies obnoxious to its foes ; ' nor is it a time to flatter or be silent, it is you, Mr. Carnal Security, that have will stripped Mansoul, and driven her glory from her ; you have pulled down her towers, you have broken down her gates, you have spoiled her locks and bars.

And now to explain myself, from that time that my Lords of Mansoul and you, Sir, grew so great ; from that time the Prince of Mansoul has been offended, and now he is arisen and gone. If any shall question the truth of my words, I will answer him by this, and such like questions. Where is the Prince Emanuel ! when did a man or woman in Mansoul see him ? When did you hear from him, or taste any of his dainty bits ? You are now feasting with this Diabolian monster, but he is not your Prince. I say therefore, though enemies from without, had you taken heed, could not have made a prey of you ; yet since you have sinned against your Prince, your enemies within have been too hard for you.

Carn. Fy, ty, Mr. Godlytear, fy ; will you never shake of your timorousness ? Are you afraid of being sparrow-blasted ? Who hath hurt you ? Behold I am on your side, only you are for doubting, and I am for being confident. Besides, is a time for being sad in ? A feast is made for mirth, why then do you now, to your shame and our trouble, break into such passionate and melancholy language, when you should eat and drink and be merry ?

Godly. I may well be sad, for Emanuel is gone from Mansoul. I say again, he is gone, and you, Sir, are the man that has driven him away ; yea, he is gone, without so much as acquainting the nobles of Mansoul with his going ; and if that is not a sign of his anger, I am not acquainted with the methods of Godliness.

*His speech to the elders of Mansoul.* " And now my Lords and gentlemen, for my speech is still to you : your gradual declining from him, did provoke him gradually to depart from you, the which he did for some time, if perhaps you would have been made sensible thereby, and have been renewed by humbling of yourselves : but when he saw that none would regard, nor lay these fearful beginnings of his anger and judgment to heart, he went away from this place, and this I saw with mine eye. Wherefore now while you boast your strength is gone ; you are like the man that had lost his locks,

that

that before did wave about his shoulders. You may, with this Lord of your feast, shake yourselves, and conclude to as at other times; but since without him you can do nothing, and he is departed from you, turn your feast into a sigh, and your mirth into a lamentation."

Then the subordinate preacher, old Mr. Conscience by name, he that of old was Re- *Conscience* member of Mansoul, being startled at what *startled.* was said, began to second it thus;

Con. Indeed my brethren, quoth he, I fear that Mr. Godlyfear tells us true; I, for my part, have not seen my Prince for a long season. I cannot remember the day for my part. Nor can I answer Mr. Godlyfear's question. I doubt, I am afraid, that all is naught with Mansoul.

Godly. Nay, I know that you shall not find him in Mansoul; for he is departed and *They are all* gone; yea, and gone for the faults of the *agast.* elders, and for that; they rewarded his grace with unsufferable unkindnesses.

Then did the subordinate preacher look as if he would fall down dead at the table, also all their present, except the man of the house, began to look pale and wan. But having a little recovered themselves, and jointly agreeing to believe Mr. Godlyfear and his sayings, they began to consult what was best to be done (now Mr. Carnal security was going into his withdrawing room, for he liked not such dumpish doings) both to the man of the house for drawing them into evil, and also to recover Emanuel's love.

And with that, that saying of their Prince came very hot in their minds, which *They consult* he had bidden them do to such as were false *and burn* prophets that should arise to delude the town *their feast* of Mansoul. So they took Mr. Carnal security, concluding that he must be he, and *master.* burned his house upon him with fire, for he also was a Diabolian by nature.

So when this was past and over, they bespied themselves to look for Emanuel their Prince; and they sought him but they found him not; then were they more confirmed in the truth of Mr. Godlyfear's sayings, and began also to reflect severely on themselves, for their so vile and  
ungodly

ungodly doings: for they concluded now, that it was through them that their Prince had left them.

Then they agreed, and went to my Lord Secretary, (him whom before they refused to hear, him whom they had grieved with their doings) to know of him, for he was a Seer, and could tell where Emanuel was, and how they might direct a petition to him. But the Lord Secretary would not admit them to a conference about this matter, nor would admit them to his royal palace of abode, nor came out to them to shew them his face or intelligence.

And now was it a day gloomy and dark, a day of clouds and of thick darkness with Mansoul. Now they saw that they had been foolish, and began to perceive what the company, and the prattle of Mr. Carnal Security had done; and what desperate damage his swaggering words had brought poor Mansoul into. But what further it was like to cost them, that they were ignorant of. Now Mr. Godlyfear began again to be in repute with the men of the town; yea, they were ready to look upon him as a prophet.

Well, when the Sabbath day was come, they went to hear their subordinate preacher; but oh how did he thunder and lighten this day! His text was in the prophet Jonah, "They that observe lying vanities, forsake their own mercies." But there was

then such power and authority in that sermon, and such a dejection seen in the countenances of the people that day, that the like hath seldom been heard or seen. The people, when sermon was done, were scarce able to go to their homes, or to betake themselves to their employs the week after; they were so sermon smitten, and also so sermon sick, by being smitten, that they knew not what to do.

He did not only shew to Mansoul their sin, but did tremble before them, under the sense of his still crying out of himself, as he preached to them, "Unhappy man that I am, that I should do so wicked a thing!" That I! a preacher! Whom the prince

*The subordinate preacher doth acknowledge his fault,*

did



Let up to teach to Mansoul his law,  
 would myself live senseless and sottishly here,  
 and be one of the first found in transgression. This transgression also fell within my  
 precincts, I should have cried out against  
 the wickedness; but I let Mansoul lie wall-  
 owing in it, until it had driven Emanuel  
 from its borders. With these things he also charged all  
 the Lords and gentry of Mansoul, to the almost distract-  
 ing of them.

*and bewails  
 his compli-  
 ance with  
 Mr. Carnal  
 security.*

About this time also, there was a great  
 sickness in the town of Mansoul; and most  
 of the inhabitants were greatly afflicted. Yea, the Captains also, and men of war,  
 were brought thereby to a languishing con-  
 dition, and that for a long time together; so that in case  
 of invasion, nothing could to purpose now have been done,  
 either by the townsmen or field officers. Oh how many  
 pale faces, weak hands, feeble knees, and staggering men  
 were now seen to walk in the streets of Mansoul. Here  
 were groans, there pants, and yonder lay those that were  
 ready to faint.

*A great sick-  
 ness in  
 Mansoul.*

The garments to which Emanuel had  
 given them, were but in a very sorry case;  
 some were rent, some were torn, and all in  
 a nasty condition; some also did hang so  
 loosely upon them, that the next bush they  
 came at was ready to pluck them off.

*Sin doth  
 cause to be  
 weak, both  
 body and soul  
 and graces.*

After some time spent in this sad and de-  
 solate condition, the subordinate preacher called for a  
 day of fasting, and to humble themselves for their being  
 so wicked against the great Shaddai, and his son. And  
 he desired that Captain Boanerges would  
 preach. So he consented to it, and the day  
 was come, and his text was thus, 'Cut it  
 down, why cumbereth it the ground?' And  
 a very smart sermon he made upon the place,  
 First, he shewed what was the occasion of the words, to  
 wit, 'because the fig tree was barren;' then he shewed  
 what was contained in the sentence, to wit, 'Repentance  
 or utter desolation.' He then shewed also, by whose au-  
 thority the sentence was pronounced, and that was by  
 Shaddai himself. And lastly he shewed the reasons of

*Boanerges  
 doth preach  
 to Mansoul.*

the point,' and then concluded his sermon. But he was very pertinent in the application, in so much that he made poor Mansoul tremble. *The men of Mansoul* this sermon as well as the former, wrought much upon the hearts of the men of Mansoul; yea, it greatly helped to keep away those that were roused by the preaching that went before. So that now throughout the whole town, there was little or nothing to be heard or seen, but sorrow, and mourning, and wo.

Now after sermon they got together, and consulted what was best to be done. *They consult what to do.* said the subordinate preacher, I will do nothing of mine own head without advising with my neighbour, Mr. Godlyfear.

For if he had afore, and understood more of the mind of our Prince than we, I do not know but he also might have it now, even now we are turning again to virtue; they called and sent for Mr. Godlyfear, and he forthwith appeared; then they desired that he would further shew his opinion about what they had best to do.

*Mr. Godlyfear's advice.* Then said the old gentleman as followed, 'It is my opinion, That this town of Mansoul should, in this day of her distress, draw up, and send an humble petition to their offended Prince Emanuel, that he, in his favour and grace will turn again unto you, and not keep anger forever.'

When the townsmen had heard this speech, they did with one consent agree to his advice; so they did presently draw up their request: and the next was, But who shall carry it? At last they did all agree to

*They send the Lord Mayor to Court.* send it by my Lord Mayor. So he accepted of the service, and addressed himself to his journey, and went and came to the court of Shaddai, where Emanuel the

Prince was gone. But the gate was shut, and a strict watch kept thereat, so that the petitioner was forced to stand without for a great while together. Then he desired that some would go into the Prince, and tell him who stood at the gate, and what his business was. So one went and told to Shaddai, and to Emanuel his son, that the Lord Mayor of the town of Mansoul stood without at the gate of the King's court, desiring to be admitted in

the presence of the Prince, the King's son. He also told what was the Lord Mayor's errand, both to the King and his son Emanuel. But the Prince would not come down, nor admit that the gate should be opened to him, but sent him an answer to this effect. 'They have turned their back unto me and not their face, but now in the time of their trouble, they say to me, avenge us and save us. But can they not now go to Mr. Carnal security, to whom they went when they returned from me; and make him their leader, their Lord, and their protector; why now in their trouble do they visit me since in their prosperity they went astray?' *A dreadful answer.*

This answer made the Lord Mayor look black in the face; it troubled, it perplexed, it rent him sore; and now again he began to see what it was to be familiar with Diabolians, such as Mr. Carnal security was. When he saw that at court, as yet, there was little help to be expected, either for himself or friends in Mansoul, he smote upon his breast, and returned weeping, and all the way bewailing the lamentable state of Mansoul. *The Lord Mayor returns and how.*

Well, when he was come within sight of the town, the elders and chief of the people of Mansoul went out at the gate to meet him, and to salute him, and to know how he sped at court. But he told them his tale in so doleful a manner, that they all cried out, and mourned and wept. Wherefore they threw ashes and dust upon their heads, and put sackcloth upon their lions, and went crying out throughout the town of Mansoul; the which when the rest of the townfolk saw, they all mourned and wept. This therefore was a day of rebuke and trouble, and of anguish to the town of Mansoul, and also of great distress. *The state of Mansoul now.*

After some time, when they had somewhat refrained themselves, they came together to consult again, what by them was yet to be done; and they asked advice, as they did before, of that reverend Mr. Godlyfear, who told them that there was no way better than to do as *The whole town cast down. They consult again Mr. Godlyfear's advice.*



they had done, nor would he that they should be discouraged at all with what they had met with at court; though several of their petitions should be answered with nought but silence or rebuke; For, said he, it is the way of the wise Shaddai to make men wait, and to exercise patience; and it should be the way of them in wait, to be willing to stay his leisure.

*See now  
what's the  
work of a back-  
sliding saint  
awakened.  
Groaning de-  
sires.*

Then they took courage, and sent again, and again, and again, and again; for there was not one day, nor an hour, that went over Mansoul's head wherein a man might not have met upon the road one or other riding post, sounding the horn from Mansoul to the court of the King Shaddai; and all with letters petitionary in behalf of and for the Prince's return to Mansoul.

The road, I say, was now full of messengers going and returning, and meeting one another; some from the court, and some from Mansoul, and this was the work of the miserable town of Mansoul, all that long, that sharp, that cold and tedious winter.

*A memento.* Now if you have not forgot, you may yet remember that I told you before, that after Emanuel had taken Mansoul, yea, and after that he had new modelled the town, there remained in several lurking places of the corporation, many of the old Diabolians, that either came with the tyrant when he invaded and took the town, or had been there by reason of unlawful mixtures; their birth and breeding, and bringing up; and their holes, dens, and lurking places were in, under, or about the wall of the town. Some of their names are the Lord Fornication, the Lord Adultery, the Lord Murder, the Lord Anger, the Lord Lasciviousness, the Lord Deceit, the Lord Evil-eye, the Lord Blasphemy, and that most horrible villain, the old and dangerous Lord Covetousness. These I told you, with many more, had yet their abode in the town of Mansoul, and that, after that Emanuel had driven their Prince Diabolus out of the castle.

Against these, the good Prince did grant a commission to the Lord Willbewill and others; yea, to the whole town of Mansoul, to seek; take, secure and destroy any, or all, that they could lay hands on; for that they were

Diabolians

Diabolians by nature enemies to the Prince, and those that sought to ruin the blessed town of Mansoul. But the town of Mansoul did not pursue this warrant, but neglected to look after, to apprehend, to secure, and to destroy these Diabolians. Wherefore what do these villians, but by degrees, took courage to put forth their heads, and to shew themselves to the inhabitants of the town. Yea, and as I was told, some of the men of Mansoul grew too familiar with some of them, to the sorrow of the corporation, as you yet will hear more of in time and place.

*Mansoul heeded not the Prince's caution, nor put his commission into execution.*

Well, when the Diabolian Lords that were left, perceived that Mansoul had, through sinning, offended Emanuel their Prince, and that he had withdrawn himself and was gone, what do they but plot the ruin of the town of Mansoul. So upon a time they met together at the hold of one Mr. Mischief, who also was a Diabolian, and there consulted how they might deliver up Mansoul into the hands of Diabolus again. Now some advised one way and some another, every man according to his own liking. At last, my Lord Lasciviousness propounded, whether it might not be best, in the first place, for some of those that were Diabolians in Mansoul, to adventure to offer themselves for servants to some of the natives of the town, for, said he, if they do so, and Mansoul shall accept of them, they may, for us, and for Diabolus our Lord, make the taking of the town of Mansoul more easy than otherwise it would be. But then stood up the Lord Murder, and said, This may not be done at this time, for Mansoul is now in a kind of rage, because, by our friend Mr. Carnal security, she hath been once insnared already, and made to offend against her Prince; and how shall she reconcile herself unto her Lord again, but by the heads of these men? Besides, we know that they have in commission, to take and to slay us wherever they shall find us, let us therefore be wise as foxes; when we are dead we can do them no hurt, but while we live we may. Thus when they had tossed the matter to and fro, they jointly agreed that a

*The Diabolians plots.*

*They send letter.*

*to hell for  
advice.*

letter should be sent away to Diabolus in their name, by which the state of the town of Mansoul should be shewed him, and how much it is under the frowns of their Prince; we may also, said some, let him know our intention, and ask of him his advice in the case.

So a letter was presently framed, the contents of which was thus:

To our great Lord, the Prince Diabolus, dwelling below, in the infernal cave.

**O** Great father, and mighty Prince Diabolus, we the true Diabolians, yet remaining in the rebellious town of Mansoul; having received our blessings from thee and our nourishment at thy hands, cannot with content and quiet, endure to behold, as we do this day: how art thou dispraised, disgraced, and reproached among the inhabitants of this town: nor is thy long absence at all delightful to us, because greatly to our detriment.

The reason of this our writing unto our Lord is, for that we are not altogether without hope that this town may become thy habitation again; for it is greatly declined from its Prince Emanuel, and he is uprisen, and is departed from them; yea, and tho' they send, and send, and send after him to return to them, yet can they not prevail, nor get good words from him.

There has been also of late, and is yet remaining, a very great sickness and faintness among them, and that not only upon the poorer sort of the town, but upon the Lords, Captains, and chief gentry of the place, (we only who are of the Diabolians by nature, remain well, lively and strong) so that through their great transgression on the one hand, and their dangerous sickness on the other, we judge they lie open to thy hand and power. If therefore it shall stand with thy horrible cunning, and with the cunning of the rest of the Princes with thee, to come and make an attempt to take the town of Mansoul again, send us word, and we shall to our utmost power, be ready to deliver it into thy hand. Or, if what we have said shall not, by thy fatherhood, be thought best, and most meet to be done, send us thy mind in a few words, and we are all



ready to follow thy counsell, to the hazarding of our lives, and what else we have.

Given under our hands, the day and date above written, after a close consultation, at the house of Mr. Mischief, who is yet alive, and hath his place in our desirable town of Mansoul.

When Mr. Profane (for he was carrier) was come with his letter to Hellgate-hill, he knocked at the brazen gate for entrance. Then did Cerberus the porter (for he is the keeper of that gate) open it to Mr. Profane, to whom he delivered this letter, which he had brought from the Diabolians in Mansoul. So he carried it in, and presented it to Diabolus his Lord, and said, Tydings, my Lord, from Mansoul; and from our trusty friends in Mansoul.

*Mr. Profane is Carrier, he brings the letter to Hellgate-hill, and there presents it to Cerberus the Porter.*

Then came together from all places of the den, Beelzebub, Lucifer, Appollyon, with the rest of the rabblement there, to hear what news from Mansoul. So the letter was broken up and read, and Cerberus he stood by. When the letter was openly read, and the contents thereof spread into all the corners of the den, command was given, that without let or stop, Dead-man's bell should be rung for joy. So the bell was rung, and the Princes rejoicing that Mansoul was like to come to run. Now the clapper of the bell went, "The town of Mansoul is coming to dwell with us, make room for the town of Mansoul." This bell therefore they did ring, because they did hope that they shall have Mansoul again.

*Dead man's bell and how it went.*

Now when they had performed this their horrible ceremony, they got together again, to consult what answer to send to our friends in Mansoul, and some advised one thing, and some another; but at length, because their business required haste, they left the whole business to the Prince Diabolus, judging him the most proper Lord of the place. So he drew up a letter as he thought fit, in answer to what Mr. Profane had brought, and sent it to the Diabolians that did dwell in Mansoul, by the same hand

hand that had brought theirs to him. And this was the contents thereof.

To our offspring, the high and mighty Diabolians, that yet dwell in the town of Mansoul: Diabolus the great Prince of Mansoul, wisheth a Prosperous issue and conclusion of these many brave enterprises, conspiracies and designs, that you, of your love and respect to our honour, have in your hearts to attempt to do against Mansoul.

**B**eloved children and disciples, my Lord Fornication, Adultery and the rest, we have here in our desolate den, received, to our highest joy and content, your welcome letter, by the hand of our trusty Mr. Profane, and to shew how acceptable your tidings were, we rang our bell for gladness; for we rejoiced as much as we could, when we perceived that yet we had friends in Mansoul, and such as sought our honour and revenge in the ruin of the town of Mansoul. We also rejoiced to hear that they are in a degenerated condition, and that they have offended their Prince, and that he is gone. Their sickness also pleaseth us, as does also your health, might and strength. Glad also would we be, right horribly beloved, could we get this town into our clutches again. Nor will we be sparing of spending our wit, our cunning, our craft, and hellish inventions, to bring to a wished conclusion, this your brave beginning in order thereto.

And take this for your comfort (our birth and our offspring) that shall we again surprise it and take it, we will attempt to put all your foes to the sword, and will make you the great Lords and Captains of the place. Nor need you fear, (if ever we get it again) that we, after that, shall be cast out any more; for we *Mat. 12. 43.* will come with more strength, and so lay *43. 45.* more fast hold than at first we did. Besides, it is the law of that Prince, that now they own, that if we get them a second time, they shall be ours for ever.

Do you therefore, our trusty Diabolians, yet more pry into and endeavour, to spy out the weakness of the town of Mansoul. We also would, that you, yourselves,

for attempt to weaken them more and more. Send us word also, by what means you think we had best attempt the regaining thereof; to wit, whether by persuasion to a vain and loose life; or, whether by tempting them to doubt and despair; or, whether by blowing up of the town by the gun powder of pride, and self-conceit. Do you also, O ye brave Diabolians, and true sons of the pit, be always in a readiness to make a most hideous assault within, when we shall be ready to storm it without. Now speed you in your project, and we in our desires, the utmost power of our gates, which is the wish of your great Diabolus, Mansoul's enemy, and him that trembles when he thinks of judgment to come, all the blessings of the Pit be upon you, and so we close up our letter,

Given at the pit's mouth by the joint consent of all the Princes of darkness, to be sent (to the force and power that we have yet remaining in Mansoul) by the hand of Mr. profane.

By me Diabolus,

This letter, as we said, was sent to Mansoul, to the Diabolians that yet remained there, and that yet inhabited the wall from the dark *Flesh*.

dungeon of Diabolus, by the hand of Mr. Profane, by whom they also in Mansoul sent their's to the pit. Now when this Mr. *Profane*

Profane had made his return and was come *comes home* to Mansoul again, he went and came as he *again*

was to wont, to the house of Mr. Mischief,

for there was the conclave, and the place where the con-

trivers were met. Now when they saw that their messen-

ger was returned safe and sound, they were greatly glad-

ded thereat. Then he presented them his letter, which

he had brought from Diabolus for them; the which when

they had read and considered, did much augment their

gladness. They asked him after the welfare of their

friends, as how their Lord Diabolus, Lucifer, and Beel-

zebub did, with the rest of those of the den. To which

this Profane made answer, Well, well, my Lords, they

are well, even as well as can be in their place. They also,

said he, did ring for joy at reading of your letter, as you

will perceive by this, when you read it.

Now



Now, as was said, when they had read their letter, and perceived that it encouraged them in their work, they fell to their way of contriving again; to wit, how they might compleat their Diabolian design upon Mansoul. And the first thing that they agreed upon was, To keep all things from Mansoul as close as they could.

Let it not be known, let not Mansoul be acquainted with what they design against it. The next thing was, How, or by what means they should try to bring to pass the ruin and overthrow of Mansoul; and one said after this manner, and another said after that. Then stood up Mr. Deceit, and said, My right Diabolian friends, our Lords, and the high one of the deep dungeon, do propound unto us these three ways.

1. Whether we had best to seek its ruin, by making of Mansoul loose and vain.

2. Or whether to drive them to doubt and despair.

3. Or whether by endeavouring to blow them up by the gunpowder of pride and self-conceit.

Now I think, if we shall tempt them to *Take heed* pride, that may do something; and if we *Mansoul.* tempt them to wantonness, that may help.

But in my mind, if we could drive them into desperation, that would knock the nail on the head; for then we should have them, in the first place, question the truth of the love of the heart of their Prince towards them, and that will disgust him much. This, if it works well, will make him leave off quickly their way of sending petitions to him; then farewell earnest solicitations for help and supply; for then this conclusion lies naturally before them. As good do nothing, as do to no purpose. So to Mr. Deceit, they unanimously did consent.

Then the next question was, But how shall *Take heed* we do to bring this our project to pass? and *Mansoul.* it was answered by the same gentleman, That this might be the best way to do it. Even let, quoth he, so many of our friends, as are willing to venture themselves for the promoting of their Prince's cause, disguise themselves with apparel, change their names, and go into the market like far countrymen, and proffer to lett themselves for servants to the famous town of Mansoul; and let them pretend to do for their masters as beneficially

essially as may be, for by so doing they may, if Man-  
shall hire them, in a little time so corrupt and defile  
the corporation, that her now Prince shall be not only  
rather offended with them, but in conclusion shall spue  
them out of his mouth. And when this is done our Prince  
Sabolus shall prey upon them with ease; yea, of them-  
selves they shall fall into the mouth of the eater.

This project was no sooner propounded but was as-  
suredly accepted, and forward were all Diabolians now  
engaged in so delicate an enterprize; but it was not  
thought fit that all should do this, wherefore they pitch-  
ed upon two or three, namely the Lord  
Covetousness, the Lord Lasciviousness and *Take heed*  
the Lord Anger. The Lord Covetousness *Manfoul.*  
called himself by the name of Prudent-thrift-  
y; the Lord Lasciviousness called himself by the name  
of Harmless mirth; and Lord Anger called himself by  
the name of Goodzeal.

So upon a market day they came into the market place,  
three lusty fellows they were to look on, and they were  
cloathed in sheeps-ruffet, which was also now in a manner  
as white as were the white robes of the men  
of Mansoul. Now the men could speak the *Take heed*  
language of Mansoul well. So when they *Manfoul.*  
were into the market place, and had offer-  
ed to lett themselves to the townsmen, they were present-  
ly taken up, for they asked but little wages, and promised  
to their masters great service.

Mr. Mind hired Prudent-thrifty and Mr. Godlyfear hi-  
red Goodzeal. True, this fellow Harmlessmirth did hang  
a little in hand, and could not so soon get him a master  
as the others did, because the town of Man-  
soul was now in lent, but after a while, be- *Take heed*  
cause lent was almost out, the Lord Willbe- *Manfoul.*  
will hired Harmlessmirth to be both his  
waitingman and his lacque, and thus they got them  
masters.

These villians now being got this far into the houses  
of the men of Mansoul, quickly began to do much mis-  
chief therein; for being filthy, arch and fly, they quickly  
corrupted the families where they were; yea, they tainted  
their masters much, especially this Prudent thrifty, and  
him they call Harmlessmirth. True, he that went under  
the

the vizir of Goodzeah was not so well liked by his master, for he quickly found that he was but a counterfeite rascal, to which when the fellow perceived, with speed he made his escape from the house, I doubt not but his master had changed things about his head when he was taken.

Well when these vagabonds had thus far carried on their design, and had corrupted the town as much as they could, in the best place they considered with themselves at what time their Prince Diabolus without, and themselves within the town, should make an attempt to seize upon the long years of Mantoul; and they all agreed upon this. A day of that a market day would be best for their worldly work; for why? Then will the townsfolk be busy in their ways: and always take this for a rule. When people are most busy

in the world they least fear a surprize. We also then  
said they, shall be able, without suspition, to gather our  
selves together, for the work of our friends. and Lord  
year, and in such a day, if we shall attempt  
*Take heed* to our work, and miss it, we may, when they  
*Assent.* shall give us the roote, the better hide our  
selves in the croud and escape.

These things being thus far agreed upon by them, they wrote another letter to Diabolus, and sent it by the hand of Mr. Profane; the contents of which was thus :

**Look to it.** The Lords of Loofnefs send to the great and  
*Mansoul.* and high Diabolus, from our dens, caves,  
 holes and strong holds, in and about the  
 wall of the town of Mansoul, greeting :

O U R Great Lord, and the nourisher of our lives, Diabolus; how glad we were when we heard of your fatherhood's readiness to comply with us, and help forward our design in our attempts to ruin Mansoul. None can tell but those who, as we do, set themselves against all appearance of good, when and wherefore we find it.

Touching the encouragement that your greatness is pleased to give us to continue to devise, contrive and study the utter desolation of Mansoul that were not solicitous about, for we know right well that it cannot but be pleasing and profitable to us to see our enemies, and them that



seek our lives to die at our feet, or fly before us. We therefore are still contriving; and that to the best of our cunning, to make this work most facile and easy to your Lordships, and to us.

First, we considered of that most hellishly cunning compacted threefold project, that by *Look to it Mansoul.* you was propounded to us in your last, and have concluded, that though to blow them up with the gunpowder of pride would do well, and to do so by tempting them to be loose and vain will help on, yet to contrive to bring them into the gulf of desperation, we think will do best of all. Now we, who are at your beck, have thoughts of two ways to do this: First, we, for our parts, will make them as vile as we can, and then you with us, at a time appointed, shall be ready to fall upon them with the utmost force. And of all the nations that are at your whistle, we think that an army of Doubters may be the most likely to *Take heed Mansoul.* attack and overcome the town of Mansoul. Thus shall we overcome those enemies, else the pit shall open her mouth upon them, and desperation shall thrust them down into it. We have also, to effect this so much by us desired design, sent already three of our trusty Diabolians among them, they are disguised in garb, they have changed their names, and are now accepted of them, to wit, Covetousness, Lasciviousness, and Anger. The name of Covetousness is changed to Prond-thrifty; and him Mr. Mind has hired, and is almost become as bad as our friend. Lasciviousness has changed his name to Harmlessmirth, and he is got to be the Lord Willbewill's lacque, but he has made his master very wanton. Anger changed his name into Goodzeal, and was entertained by Mr. Godlyfear, but the peevish old gentleman took pepper in the nose, and turned our companion out of his house. Nay, he has informed us since, that he ran away from him, or else his old master had hanged him up for his labour.

Now these have much helped forward our work and design upon Mansoul; for notwithstanding the spite and quarrelsome temper of the old gentleman last mentioned, the other two play their business well, and are like to ripen the work apace. *Look to it Mansoul.*

Our next project is, that it be concluded, that you come upon the town upon a market day, and that when they are upon the heat of their business, for then to be sure they will be most secure, and least think that *Take heed* an assault will be made upon them. They *Mansoul.* will also at such a time be less able to defend themselves, and to offend you in the prosecution of our design. And we your trusty (and we are sure your beloved) ones, shall, when you shall make your furious assault without, be ready to second the business within. So shall we, in all likelihood, be able to put Mansoul to utter confusion, and to swallow them up before they can come to themselves. If your serpentine heads, (most subtil dragons) and our highly esteemed Lords, can find out a way better than this, let us quickly know your minds.

To the monsters of the infernal cave, from the house of Mr. Mischief in Mansoul, by the hand of Mr. Profane.

Now all the while that the raging runagates and hellish Diabolians, were thus contriving the ruin of the town of Mansoul, they, to wit, the poor town itself, was in a sad and woful case, particularly because they *The sad* had so grievously offended Shaddai and his *state of* son, and partly because that the enemies *Mansoul.* thereby got strength within them afresh, and also because, though they had, by many petitions, made suit to the Prince Emanuel and to his father Shaddai, by him, for their pardon and favour, yet hitherto obtained, they not only smile, but contrariwise, thro' the craft and subtilty of the Diabolians, their cloud was made to grow blacker and blacker, and their Emanuel to stand at farther distance.

The sickness also did greatly rage in Mansoul, both among the Captains and the inhabitants of the town, and their enemies only were now lively and strong and like to become the head, whilst Mansoul was made the tail.

*Profane* By this time the letter last mentioned, that *arrives at* was written by the Diabolians that yet lurked in the town of Mansoul, was conveyed to Diabolus

bolus in the Black-den, by the hand of Mr. *Hellgate-Profane*. He carried the letter by *Hellgate-bill* as afore, and conveyed it by Cerberus to his Lord.

But when Cerberus and Mr. Profane did meet, they were presently as great as beggars, and thus they fell in- to discourse about Mansoul, and about the project against her.

Cerberus. Ah! Old Friend, art thou come to Hell- gatehill again? By St. Mary I am glad to see thee.

Profane. Yes, my Lord, I am come again about the concerns of the town of Mansoul.

Cerberus. Prithee tell me what condition is that town of Mansoul in at present?

Profane. In a brave condition, my Lord, for us and for my Lords, the Lords of this place I trow; for they are greatly decayed as to godliness, and that's as well as our hearts can wish, their Lord is greatly out with them, and that doth also please us well. We have already also a foot in their dish, for our Diabolian friends are laid in their bosoms, and what do we lack but to be masters of the place. Besides, our trusty friends in Mansoul are daily plotting to betray it to the Lords of this town; also the sickness rags bitterly among them; and what do we lack but to be masters of the place.

Cerberus. Then said the dog of Hellgate, no time like this to assault them, I wish that the enterprize by followed close, and that the success desired may be soon effected; yea, I wish it for the poor Diabolian's sakes that lived in the continual fear of their lives, in that traiterous town of Mansoul.

Profane. The contrivance is almost finished, the Lords in Mansoul that are Diabolians are at it day and night; and the other are like silly doves, they want heart to be concerned with their state, and to consider that ruin is at hand. Besides you may, yea, must think when you put all things together, that there are many reasons that prevail with Diabolus to make what haste he can.

Cerberus. Thou hast said as it is, I am glad things are at this pass. Go in, my brave Profane, to my Lords, they will give thee for thy welcome as good a coranto as



the whole of this kingdom will afford. I have sent thy letter in already.

Then Mr. Profane went into the den; and his Lord Diabolus met him, and saluted him with Welcome my trusty servant; I have been very glad with thy letter. The rest of the Lords of the pit gave him also their salutations. Then Profane, after obeisance made to them all, said, Let Mansoul be given to my Lord Diabolus, and let him be her King for ever: And with that the hollow belly, and yawning gorge of hell, gave so loud and hideous a groan (for that is the musick of that place) that it made the mountains about it totter as if they would fall in pieces.

Now after they had read and considered the letter, they consulted what answer to return, and the first that did speak to it was Lucifer.

*They consult what answer to give to the letter.* Lucifer. The first project of the Diabolians in Mansoul is like to be lucky, and to take; to wit, that they will, by all the ways and means they can, make Mansoul yet more vile and filthy; no way to destroy a soul like this; this is *probatum est*, our old friend and relation Balaam went this way and prospered many years ago, let this therefore stand with us for a maxim, and be to Diabolians for a general rule in all ages, for nothing can make this to fail but grace, in which I would hope that this town has no share. But whether to fall upon them on a market day, because of their cumber in business, that I would should be under debate.

*Lucifer.*

*Numb.*

*xxxi 16.*

*Rev. vii.*

*14.*

*Cumber-ments are dangerous.*

And there is more reason why this head should be debated than why some other should, because upon this will turn the whole of what we shall attempt. If we time not our business well, our whole project may fail. Our friends, the Diabolians,

*They had need do it.* say, that a market day is best; for then will Mansoul be most busy, and have few thoughts of surprise. But what if also they shall double their guards on those days, and methink nature and reason should teach them to do it; and what if they should keep such a watch on those days, as the neces-

sity.

ity of their present case doth require? Yea, what if their men should be always in arms on those days? Then you may, my Lords, be disappointed in your attempts, and may bring our friends in the town to utter danger of unavoidable ruin.

Beelzebub. There is something in what my Lord hath said, but his conjecture may, or may not fall. Nor hath my Lord laid it down as that which must not be receded from, for I know that he said it only to provoke to a warm debate thereabout. Therefore we must understand if we can, whether the town of Mansoul has such sense and knowledge of her decayed state, and of the design that we have on foot against her, as doth provoke her to set watch and ward at her gates, and to double them on market days. But if after enquiry made, it shall be found that they are asleep, then any day will do, but a market day is best: and this is my judgment in this case.

Diabolus. How should we know this? and 'twas answered, Enquire about it at the mouth of Mr. Profane. So Profane was called in and asked the question, and he made answer as follows.

Profane. My Lord, so far as I can gather, this is at present the condition of the town of Mansoul; they are decayed in their faith and love, Emanuel their Prince has given them the back; they send often by petition to fetch him again, but he maketh not haste to answer their request; nor is there much reformation among them.

*Profane's  
description of  
the present  
state of Man-  
soul.*

Diabolus. I am glad that they are backward to a reformation, but yet I am afraid of their petitioning. However, their looseness of life is a sign that there is not much heart in what they do, and without the heart, things are little worth. But go on, my masters, I will divert you, my Lords, no longer.

Beelzebub. If the case be so with Mansoul as Mr. Profane has describ'd it to be, 'twill be no great matter what day we assault it, nor their prayers nor their power will do them much service.

Apollyon. My opinion concerning this matter, is, that we go on fair and softly, *Dreadful ad-*

*vice against  
Mansoul.*

not doing things in a hurry. Let our friends in Mansoul go on still to pollute and defile it, by seeking to draw it yet more into sin, for there is nothing, nothing like sin to devour Mansoul. If this be done, and it takes effect, Mansoul of itself will leave off to watch to petition, or any thing else that should tend to her security and safety, for she will forget her Emanuel, she will not desire his company; and can she be gotten thus to live, her Prince will not come to her in haste. Or trusty friend Mr. Carnal Security, with one of his tricks, did drive him out of the town, and why may not my Lord Covetousness and My Lord Lasciviousness, by what they may do, keep him out of the town? And this I will tell you, not because you know it not, that two or three Diabolians, if entertained and countenanced by the town of Mansoul, will do more to the keeping of Emanuel from them, and towards making of the town of Mansoul your own, than can any army of a legion that should be sent out from us to withstand him.

*Dreadful ad-  
vice against  
Mansoul.*

Let therefore this first project, that our friends in Mansoul have set on foot, be strongly and diligently carried on, with all cunning and craft imaginable; and let them send continually, under one disguise or another, more of their men to play with the people of Mansoul; and then perhaps, we shall not need to be at the charge of making a war upon them; or, if that must of necessity be done, yet the more sinful they are, the more unable, to be sure they will be to resist us, and then the more easy we shall overcome them. And besides, suppose, and that is the worst that can be supposed, that Emanuel should come to them again, why may not the same means, or the like, drive him from them once more? Yea, why may he not, by their lapse into that sin again, be driven from them for ever, for the sake of which he was at the first driven from them for a season! And if this should happen, then away

*Dreadful ad-  
vice against  
Mansoul.*

go with him his rams, his slings, his Captains his soldiers, and he leaveth Mansoul naked and bare. Yea, will not this town when she sees herself utterly forsaken of her Prince, of her own accord, open her gates again unto you, and make of you as in the days of old;



old; but this must be done by time, a few days will not effect so great a work as this.

So soon as Apollyon had made an end of speaking, Diabolus began to blow out his own malice, and to plead his own cause, and he said, my Lord and powers of the cave, my true and trusty friends I have, with much impatience as becomes me, given ear to your long and tedious orations; but my furious gorge, and empty paunch, so lusteth after a repossession of my famous town of Mansoul, that whatever comes on't I can wait no longer to see the events of lingering projects. I must, and that without further delay, seek, by all means I can, to fill my unfatiable gulf with the soul *Look to it* and body of the town of Mansoul. There- *Mansoul.* fore lend me your heads, your hearts and your help, now I am going to recover my town of Mansoul.

When the Lords and Princes of the pit saw the flaming desire that was in Diabolus, to devour the miserable town of Mansoul, they left off to raise any more objections, but consented to lend them what strength they could; though had Apollyon's advice been taken, they had far more fearfully distressed the town of Mansoul. But I say, they were willing to lend him what strength they could, not knowing what need they might have of him when they should engage for themselves, as he. Wherefore they fell to advising about the next thing propounded, to wit, what soldiers they were, and also how many, with whom Diabolus should go against the town of Mansoul to take it; and after some debate, it was concluded, according as in the letter the Diabolians had suggest-

ed, that none was more fit for that expedition than an army of terrible doubters. *An army of doubters raised to go against the town of Mansoul.* They therefore concluded to lend against Mansoul an army of sturdy Doubters. The number thought fit to be employed in that service was between twenty and thirty thousand. So then the result of that great coun-

sel of those high and mighty Lord's was, that Diabolus should even now out of the hand, beat up his drum for men in the land of Doubling (which land lieth upon the confines of the place called Hellgate hill) for men that might be employed by him against the miserable town of Mansoul.

*The Prince's  
of the pit go  
with them.*

Manfoul. It was concluded, that the Lords themselves should help them in the war, and that they would, to that end, head and manage his men. So they drew up a letter, and sent it back to the Diabolians that lurked in Manfoul, and that waited for the back coming of Mr. Profane, to signify to them into what method and forwardness they at present had put their design. The contents whereof now followeth.

*Another letter  
from Diabolus  
to the Diabolians  
in Manfoul.*

From the dark and horrible dungeon of hell, Diabolus, with all the society of the Princes of darkness, sends to our trusty ones in and about the walls of the town of Manfoul, now impatiently waiting for our most devilish answer, to their venemous and most poisonous design against the town of Manfoul.

**O**UR native ones, in whom from day to day we boast, and in whose actions all the year long we do greatly delight ourselves; we received your welcome, because highly esteemed letter, at the hand of our trusty and greatly beloved, the old gentleman Mr. Profane. And to give you to understand, that when we had broke it up, and had read the contents thereof, to your amazing memory be it spoken, our yawning hollow bellied place where we are, made so hideous and yelling a noise for joy, that the mountains that stand round about Hellgate-hill, had like to have been shaken to pieces at the sound thereof.

We could also do no less than admire your faithfulness to us, with the greatest of that subtilty that now hath shewed itself to be in your heads to serve us against the town of Manfoul. For you have invented for us so excellent a method for our proceeding against that rebellious people, a more effectual one cannot be thought of by all the wits of Hell. The proposals therefore which now at last you have sent us, since we saw them, we have done little else, but highly approved and admired them.

Nay, we shall to encourage you in the profoundity of your craft, let you know, that at a full assembly and conclave of your princes and principalities of this place, your project was discoursed and tossed from one side of our cave

to the other by their mightinesses, but a better, and as was by themselves judged, a more fit and proper way, by all their wits, could not be invented to surprise, take and make our own, the rebellious town of Mansoul.

Wherefore in fine, all that was said, that varied from what you had in your letter propounded, fell of itself to the ground, and yours only was stuck to by Diabolus the Prince; yea his gaping gorge and yawning paunch was on fire, to put your invention into execution.

We therefore give you to understand, that our stout, furious and unmerciful Diabolus is raising for our relief, and the ruin of the rebellious town of Mansoul, more than twenty thousand Doubters to come against that people. They are all stout and sturdy men, and men that of old have been accustomed to war, and that can therefore well endure the drum; I say, he is doing of this work of his, with all the possible speed he can: for his heart and spirit is engaged in it. We desire therefore, that as you have hitherto stuck to us, and given us both advice and encouragement thus far, that you still will prosecute our design, nor shall we lose, but be gainers thereby; yea, we intend to make you the Lords of Mansoul.

One thing may not, by any means, be omitted, that is, those with us do desire, that every one of you that are in Mansoul would still use all your power, cunning and skill, with delusive persuasions, yet to draw the town of Mansoul into more sin and wickedness, even that sin may be finished and bring forth death.

For thus it was concluded with us, that the more vile, sinful, and debauched the town of Mansoul is, the more backward will be their Emanuel to come to their help, either by presence or other relief; yea, the more sinful the more weak, and so the more unable will they be to make resistance, when we shall make our assault upon them to swallow them up; yea, that may cause that their mighty Shaddai himself may cast them out of his protection, yea, and send for his Captains and soldiers home, with his slings and rams, and leave them naked and bare, and then the town of Mansoul will of itself, open to us, and fall as the fig into the mouth of the eater; yea, to be sure, we then shall, with a great deal of ease, come upon her and overcome her.

*Take heed  
Mansoul.*



As to the time of your coming upon Mansoul, we as yet have not fully resolved upon that: though at present some of us think as you, that a market-day, or a market-day at night, will certainly be the best. However do you be ready, and when you shall hear our roaring drum without, do you be as busy to make the most horrible confusion within; so shall Mansoul certainly be distressed before and behind, and shall not know which way to betake herself for help. My Lord Lucifer, my Lord Beelzebub, my Lord Apollyon, my Lord Legion, with the rest salute you, as does also my Lord Diabolus, and we wish both you, with all that you do or shall possess, the very self-same fruit and success for their doings, as we ourselves at present enjoy for ours.

From our dreadful confines in the most fearful pit, we salute you, and so do those many legions here with us, wishing you may be as hellicly prosperous as we desire to be ourselves. By the letter carrier, Mr. Profane.

Then Mr. Profane addressed himself for his return to Mansoul, with his errand from the horrible pit to the Diabolians that dwelt in that town. So he came up the stairs from the deep to the mouth of the cave where Cerberus was. Now when Cerberus saw him, he asked how matters did go below, about and against the town of Mansoul.

Profane. Things go as well as we can expect. The letter that I carried thither was as highly approved, and well liked by all my Lords, and I am returning to tell our Diabolians so. I have an answer to it here in my bosom, that I am sure will make our masters, that sent me, glad; for the contents thereof is to encourage them to pursue their design to the utmost, and to be ready also to fall on within, when they shall see my Lord Diabolus beleaguering of the town of Mansoul.

Cerberus. But does he intend to go against them himself?

Profane. Does he! Ay, and he will take along with him more than twenty thousand, ill sturdy doubters, and men of war, pick'd men, from the land of Doubting, to serve him in the expedition.

Cerberus.

*The land  
from the which  
the Doubters  
come.*

*land, ill sturdy doubters, and men of  
war, pick'd men, from the land of Doubt-  
ing, to serve him in the expedition.*

Cerberus. Then was Cerberus glad, and said, And are there such brave preparations a making, to go against the miserable town of Mansoul; and would I might be put at the head of a thousand of them, that I might also shew my valour against the famous town of Mansoul.

Profane. Your wish may come to pass, you look like one that has mettle enough, and my Lord will have with him those that are valiant and stout. But my business requires haste.

Cerberus. Ay, so it does. Speed thee to the town of Mansoul, with all the mischiefs that this place can afford thee. And when thou shalt come to the house of Mr. Mischief, the place where the Diabolians meet to plot, tell them that Cerberus doth with them his service, and that if he may, he will, with the army, come up against the famous town of Mansoul.

Profane. That I will; and I know that my Lords that are there will be glad to hear it, and to see you also.

So after a few more such kind of compliments, Mr. Profane took his leave of his friend Cerberus, and Cerberus again, with a thousand of the pit wishes, bid him hasten with all speed to his masters; the which when he had heard, he made obeisance, and began to gather up his heels to run.

Thus therefore he returned, and went and came to Mansoul; and going, as afore, to the house of Mr. Mischief, there he found the Diabolians assembled, and waiting for his return. Now when he was come, and had presented himself, he also delivered to them his letter, and adjoining this compliment to them there-  
*Profane returned again to Mansoul.*

with: My Lords from the confines of the pit, the high and mighty principalities and powers of the den salute you here, the true Diabolians of the town of Mansoul. Wishing you always the most proper of the benedictions, for the great service, high attempts, and brave achievements that you have put yourselves upon, for the restoring to our Prince Diabolus the famous town of Mansoul.

This was therefore the present state of the miserable town of Mansoul; she had offended her Prince, and he was gone; she had encouraged the powers of hell, by her foolishness

foolishness, to come against her to seek her utter destruction.

True, the town of Mansoul was somewhat more sensible of her sin, but the Diabolians were gotten into her bowels; she cried, but Emanuel was gone, and her cries did not fetch him as yet again. Besides, she knew not whether ever or never he would return and come to his Mansoul again; nor did they know the power and industry of the enemy, nor how forward they were to put in execution that plot of hell that they had devised against her.

They did indeed still send petition after petition to the Prince, but he answered all with silence. They did neglect reformation, and that was as Diabolus would have it; for he knew if they regarded iniquity in their heart, their King would not hear their prayers; they therefore did still grow weaker and weaker, and were as a rolling thing before the whirlwind. They cried to their King for help, and laid Diabolians in their bosom, what therefore should a King do to them? Yea, they seemed not to be a mixture in Mansoul, and the Diabolians and the Mansolians would walk the streets together: yea, they began to seek their peace, for they thought that since the sickness had been so mortal in Mansoul, 'twas in vain to go to hand-grips with them; besides the weakness of Mansoul was the strength of their enemies, and the sins of Mansoul the advantage of the Diabolians. The foes of Mansoul did also now begin to promise themselves the town for a possession, there was no great difference now betwixt Mansolians and Diabolians, both seemed to be masters of Mansoul; yea, the Diabolians increased and grew, but the town of Mansoul diminished greatly. There was more than eleven thousand of men, women and children that died by the sickness in Mansoul.

*Good thoughts, good conceptions and good desires.*

But now as Shaddai would have it, there was one whose name was Mr. Prywell, a great lover of the people of Mansoul; and he, as his manner was, did go listening up and down in Mansoul to see and hear, it at any time he might, whether there was any design against it or no; for he was always a

jealous



alous man, and feared some mischief some-  
 time would befall him, either from the Dia-  
 bolians within, or from some power without. Now up-  
 on a time it so happened, as Mr. Prywell went listening  
 here and there, that he lighted upon a place  
 called Vilehill in Mansoul, where Diaboli-  
 ans used to meet; so hearing a muttering  
 (you may know that it was in the night) he  
 softly drew near to hear; nor had he stood  
 long under the house end, for there stood a  
 house there, but he heard one confidently  
 affirm, that it was not, nor would not be long before  
 Diabolus should possess himself again of Mansoul, and  
 that then the Diabolians did intend to put all Man-  
 soulians to the sword; and would kill and destroy the  
 King's Captains, and drive all his soldiers out of the  
 town.

*Prywell.*

*The Dia-  
 bolian plot  
 discovered,  
 and by  
 whom.*

He said moreover, that he knew there were above  
 twenty thousand fighting men prepared by Diabolus for  
 the accomplishing of this design, and that it  
 would not be many months before they all  
 should see it. When Mr. Prywell had heard  
 this story, he did quickly believe it was true,  
 wherefore he went forthwith to my Lord  
 Mayor's house, and acquainted him therewith, who send-  
 ing for the Subordinate Preacher, brake the business to  
 him, and he as soon gave alarm to the town; for he was  
 now the chief preacher in Mansoul, because  
 as yet my Lord Secretary was ill at ease; and  
 this was the way that the Subordinate Preach-  
 er did take to alarm the town therewith. The  
 same hour he caused the lecture-bell to be rung,  
 so the people came together, he gave them  
 then a short exhortation to watchfulness, and made Mr.  
 Prywell's news the argument thereof. For, said he, an  
 horrible plot is contrived against Mansoul, even to massa-  
 cre us all in a day; nor is this story to be slighted, for  
 Mr. Prywell is the author thereof. Mr. Prywell was al-  
 ways a lover of Mansoul, a sober and judicious man, a  
 man that is no tatter, nor raiser of false reports, but one  
 that loves to look into the very bottom of matters, and  
 talks nothing of news, but by very solid arguments.

*Under-  
 standing  
 conscience.*

*The Sub-  
 ordinate  
 Preacher  
 awakened.*

R

I will

*Prywell tells  
his news to  
Mansoul.*

I will call him, and you shall hear your own selves; so he called him and came and told his tale so punctual, affirmed its truth with such ample ground that Mansoul fell presently under a conviction of the truth of what he said. The preacher did also back him, saying, Sirs, it is not irrational for us to believe it, for we have provoked Shaddai to anger, and have sinned Emanuel out of the town; we have had too much correspondence with Diabolians, and have forsaken our former mercies; no marvel then if the enemy, both within and without, should design and plot our ruin; and what time like this to do it?

*Good desires.*

The sickness is now in the town, and we have been made weak thereby. Many a good meaning man is dead; and the Diabolians of late grew stronger and stronger.

Besides, quoth the Subordinate Preacher, I have received from this good truth teller, this was one thing further, that he understood by those that he overheard, that several letters have lately passed between the Fauies and the

*They take the  
alarm.*

Diabolians, in order to our destruction. When Mansoul heard all this, and not being able to gainsay it, they lift up their voice and wept. Mr. Prywell did also, in the presence of the townsmen, confirm all that their subordinate preacher had said, Wherefore they now set afresh to bewail their folly, and to a doubling of

*They tell the  
thing to the  
Captains.*

petitions to Shaddai and his son. They also break the business to the Captains, high commanders, and men of war, in the town of Mansoul, entreating of them to use the means to be strong, and to take good courage, and that they would look after their harness, and make themselves ready to give Diabolus battle by night or by day, should he come, as they are informed he will, to beleaguer the town of Mansoul.

When the Captains heard this (they being always true lovers of the town of Mansoul) what do they, but like so many Sampsons, they shake themselves, and came together to consult and contrive then

*They come to-  
gether to con-  
sult.*

how to defeat those bold and hellish contrivances that were upon the wheel, by the means

means of Diabolus and his friends, against the now sick-  
 weakly, and much impoverished town of Mansoul;  
 and they agreed upon these following particulars.

1. That the gates of Mansoul should be  
 kept shut, and made fast with bars and *Their agree-*  
 locks, and that all persons that went out or *ment.*  
 come in, should be very strictly examined.

The Captains of the guards, to the end, said they, that  
 those are managers of the plot amongst us may, either  
 coming or going, be taken; and that we may also find  
 out, who are the great contrivers amongst us of our ruin,  
 Lam. iii. 40.

2. The next thing was, that a strict search should be  
 made for all kind of Diabolians throughout the whole  
 town of Mansoul; and that every man's house, from top  
 to bottom, should be looked into, and that too, house by  
 house, that if possible, a further discovery might be made  
 of all such among them, as had a hand in these designs,  
 Heb. xii. 15, 16.

3. It was further concluded upon, that wheresoever, or  
 with whomsoever any of the Diabolians were found, that  
 even those of the town of Mansoul that had given them  
 house and harbour, should, to their shame, and warning  
 of others, do penance in the open place, Jer. ii. 34.  
 Chron. v. 26. Ezek. xvi. 32.

4. It was moreover resolved by the famous town of  
 Mansoul, that a public fast, and a day of humiliation  
 should be kept through the whole corporation, to the  
 justifying of their Prince, the abusing of themselves be-  
 fore him, for their transgressions against him, and against  
 Shaddai his father. It was further resolved, that all such  
 in Mansoul as did not on that day endeavour to keep that  
 fast, and to humble themselves for their faults, but that  
 should mind their worldly employments, or be found  
 wandering up and down the streets, should be taken for  
 Diabolians, and should suffer as Diabolians for such their  
 wicked doings.

5. It was further concluded then, that with what speed,  
 and with what warmth of mind they could, they would  
 renew their humiliation for sin, and their petitions to  
 Shaddai for help; they also resolved to send tidings to  
 the court of all that Mr. Prywell had told them.

6. It was also determined, that thanks should be given



*Mr. Prywell  
is made scout  
master gene-  
ral.*

by the town of Mansoul to Mr. Prywell, for his diligent seeking of the welfare of the town; and further, that forasmuch as he was so naturally inclined to seek their good, and also, to undermine their foes, they gave him a commission of Scout-master General for the good of the town of Mansoul.

When the corporation, with their Captains, had thus concluded, they did as they had said; they shut up their gates; they made, for Diabolians, strict search; they made those with whom any was found, to make penance in the open place. They kept their fast, and renewed their petitions to their Prince, and Mr. Prywell managed his

*Mr. Prywell  
goes a scout-  
ing.*

charge, and the trust that Mansoul put in his hands, with great conscience and good fidelity; for he gave himself wholly up to his employ, and that not only within the town, but he went out to pry, to see, and to hear.

And not many days after, he provided for his journey, and went towards Hellgate-hill, in the country where the Doubters were, where he heard of all that had been talked of in Mansoul, and he perceived also, that Diabolus was almost ready for his march, &c. so he came back with speed, and calling the Captains and elders of Mansoul together, he told them where he had been, what he had heard, and what he had seen.

*He returns  
with great  
news.*

Particularly, he told them, That Diabolus was almost ready for his march, and that he had made old Mr. Incredulity, that once brake prison in Mansoul, the General of his army; that his army consisted of all Doubters, and their number was above twenty thousand. He told moreover that Diabolus did intend to bring with him the chief Princes of the infernal pit, and that he would make them chief Captains over his Doubters. He told them moreover, that it was certainly true, that several of the black den would, with Diabolus, ride reformades, to reduce the town of Mansoul to the obedience of Diabolus their Prince.

He said moreover, that he understood by the Doubters, among whom he had been, that the reason why old Incredulity was made general of the whole army, was because none truer than he to the tyrant; and because he had

had an implacable spite against the welfare of the town of Mansoul. Besides, said he, he remembers the affronts that Mansoul has given, and he is resolved to be revenged of them.

But the black Princes shall be made high commanders, only Incredulity shall be over them all, because (which I had almost forgot) he can more easily, and more dextrously beleaguer the town of Mansoul, than can any of the Prince's besides.

Now when the Captains of Mansoul, with elders of the town, had heard the tidings that Mr. Prywell did bring, they thought it expedient, without further delay, to put into execution the laws that, against the Diabolians, their Prince had made for them, and given them in commandment to manage against them. Wherefore, forthwith a diligent and impartial search was made in all houses in Mansoul, for all, and all manner of Diabolians. Now in the house of Mr. Mind, and in the house of the great Lord Willbewill, were two Diabolians found. In Mr. Mind's house was one Lord Covetousness found, but he had changed his name to Prudent-thrift. In my Lord Willbewill's house one Leiciviousness was found, but he had changed his name to Harmlessmirth. These two, the Captains and elders of the town of Mansoul took, and committed them to custody, under the hand of Mr. Trueman the Jaylor; and this man handled them so severely, and loaded them so well with irons, that in time they both fell into a very deep consumption, and died in the prison house: their masters also, according to the agreement of the Captains and elders, were brought to do penance in the open place, to their shame, and for a warning to the rest of the town of Mansoul.

Now this was the manner of penance in those days. The persons offending, being made sensible of the evil of their doings, were enjoined to do open confession of their faults, and a strict amendment of their lives.

After this the Captains and elders of Mansoul sought yet to find out more Diabolians wherever they lurked, whether in dens, caves, holes, vaults, or where else they could,

*Some Diabolians taken in Mansoul and committed to prison.*

*The Lord Willbewill and Mr. Mind do penance.*

*Penance what.*

could, in, or about the wall or town of Mansoul. But though they could plainly see their footing, and so follow them by their tract and smell to their holds, even to the mouths of their caves and dens, yet take them, hold them, and do justice upon them, they could not; their ways were so crooked, their holds so strong, and they so quick to take sanctuary there.

But Mansoul did now, with so stiff an hand, rule over the Diabolians that were left, that they were glad to shrink into corners: time was when they durst walk openly, and in the day, but now they are forced to embrace privacy and the night; time was when a Monfouleian was their companion, but now they counted them deadly enemies. This good change did Mr. Prywell's intelligence make in the famous town of Mansoul.

By this time Diabolus had finished his army, which he intended to bring with him for the ruin of Mansoul, and had set over them Captains and other field officers, such as liked his furious stomach best; himself was Lord Paramount. Incredulity was general of his army, *Diabolus's* their highest Captains shall be named after *army.* wards; but now for their officers, colours and scutcheons.

1. Their first Captain was Captain Rage, he was Captain over the Election-doubters, his were the red colours, his standard bearer was Mr. Destructive, and the great red dragon he had for his scutcheon, Rev. xii. 3, 4, 13, 15, 17.

2. The second Captain was Captain Fury, he was Captain over the Vocation doubters, his standard bearer was Mr. Darkness, his colours were those that were pale, and he had for his scutcheon the fiery flying serpent, Num. xxi. 6.

3. The third Captain was Captain Damnation, he was Captain over the Grace doubters, his were the red colours, Mr. Nolife bare them, and he had for his scutcheon the black den, Rev. ix. 1.

4. The fourth Captain was Captain Insatiable, he was Captain over the Faith-doubters, his were the red colours, Mr. Devourer bare them, and he had for his scutcheon the yawning jaws, Pro. xxvii. 20.

5. The fifth Captain was Captain Brimstone, he was Captain over the Perseverance-doubters, his were the red



nd colours, Mr. Burning bare them, and his scutcheon was the blue and stinking flame, Psalm xi. 6. Rev. xiv. 11.

6. The sixth Captain was Captain Torment, he was Captain over the Resurrection doubters, his colours were those that were pale, Mr. Gnaw was his standard bearer, and he had the black worm for his scutcheon, Mark ix. 44. 46. 48.

7. The seventh Captain was Captain Noease, he was Captain over the Salvation-doubters, his were the red colours, Mr. Restless bare them, and his scutcheon was the ghastly picture of death, Rev. iv. 11. cha. 6. 8.

8. The eighth Captain was Captain Sepulcher, he was Captain over the Glory-doubters, his were the pale colours, Mr. Corruption was his standard bearer, and he had for his scutcheon a skull, and dead mens bones, Jer. xv. 16. cha. 2. 25.

9. The ninth Captain was Captain Pasthope, he was Captain of those that were called Felicity-doubters, his standard bearer was Mr. Despair, his also were the red colours, and his scutcheon was the hot iron, and the hard heart, 1 Tim. iv. 2. Rom. ii. 5.

These were their Captains, and these were their forces, these were their standards, these were their colours, and these were their scutcheons. Now over these did the great Diabolus make superior Captains, and they were in number seven: as namely, the Lord Beelzebub, the Lord Lucifer, the Lord Legion, the Lord Appollyon, the Lord Bython, the Lord Cerberus, and the Lord Belial; these seven he set over the Captains, and Incredulity was Lord General and Diabolus was King.

The Reformades also, such as were like themselves, were made some of them Captains of hundreds, and some of them Captains of more: and this was the army of Incredulity compleated. *Diabolus's army compleated.*

So they set out at Hellgate-hill (for there they had their rendezvous) from whence they came with a streight course upon their march towards the town of Mansoul. Now, as we hinted before, the town had, as Shaddai would have it, received from the mouth of Mr. Prywell, the alarm of their coming before. Wherefore they set a strong watch at the gates, and had also doubled their guards; they

they also mounted their slings in good places, where they might conveniently cast out their great stones to the annoyance of the furious enemy.

Nor could those Diabolians that were in the town do that hurt he was designed they should; for Mansoul was now awake. But alas! poor people, they were sorely affrighted at the first appearance of their foes, and at their sitting down before the town, especially when they heard the roaring of their drum. This, to speak truth, was amazingly hideous to hear, it frightened all men seven miles round, if they were but awake and heard it. The streaming of their colours were also terrible and dejecting to behold.

When Diabolus was come against the town, *He makes first he made his approach to Ear-gate, and an assault gave it a furious assault, supposing (as it seems) upon Ear-gate and that his friends in Mansoul had been ready to do the work within, but care was taken of is repelled.* that before, by the vigilance of the Captains.

Wherefore, missing of that help that he expected from them, and finding of his army warmly attended with the stones that the slingers did sling, *He retreats and intrenches himself.* (for that I will say for the Captains, that considering the weakness that was yet upon them, by reason of the long sickness that had annoyed the town of Mansoul, they did gallantly behave themselves) he was forced to make some retreat from Mansoul, and to intrench himself and his men in the field, without the reach of the slings of the town.

Now having intrenched himself, he did *He casts cast up four mounts against the town; the up mounts first he called Mount Diabolus, putting his against the name thereon, the more to affright the town town.* of Mansoul; the other three he called thus,

Mount Alesto, Mount Meagre, and Mount Tisaphane, for these are the names of the dreadful turies of hell. Thus he began to play his game with Mansoul, and to serve it as doth the lion his pray, even to make it fall before his terror. But as I said, the Captains and soldiers resisted so stoutly, and did so much execution with their stones, that they made him (though against his

Stomach)

Homach) to retreat, wherefore Mansoul began to take courage.

Now upon Mount Diabolus, which was raised on the north side of the town, there did the tyrant set up his standard, and a fearful thing it was to behold, for he had wrought in it, by devilish art, after the manner of an escutcheon, a flaming flame, fearful to behold, and the picture of Mansoul burning in it. *Diabolus's standard set up.*

When Diabolus had thus done, he commanded that his drummer should, every night, approach the walls of the town of Mansoul, and so beat a parley; the command was to do it every night, for in the daytime they annoyed him with their slings; for the tyrant said, that he had a mind to parley with the now trembling town of Mansoul, and he commanded that the drums should beat every night, that through weariness they might at last, if possible (at the first they were unwilling) yet be forced to do it. *He bids his Drummer to beat his drum.*

So this drummer did as commanded, he arose and did beat his drum; but when this drum did go, one looked toward the town of Mansoul, 'Behold darkness and sorrow, and the light was darkened in the heaven thereof.' No noise was ever heard upon earth more terrible, except the voice of Shaddai, when he now speaketh. But how did Mansoul tremble! It now looked for nothing but forthwith to be swallowed up. *Mansoul trembles at the noise of his drum Isa. v. 30.*

When this drummer had beaten for a parley, he made his speech to Mansoul, 'My master has bid me tell you, that if ye will willingly submit, you shall have the good of the earth; but if you shall be stubborn, he is resolved to take you by force.' But by that the fugative had done beating of his drum, the people of Mansoul had betaken themselves to the Captains that were in the castle, so that there was none to regard, nor to give this drummer an answer, so he proceeded no further that night, but returned again to his matter to the camp. *Diabolus calls back his drum.*

When Diabolus saw that by drumming he could not work out Mansoul to his will, the next night he sendeth his



his drummer without his drum, still to let the townsmen know that he had a mind to parley with them: but when all came to all, his parley was turned into a summons to the town, to deliver up themselves; but they gave him neither heed nor hearing, for they remembered what at first it cost them to hear him a few words.

The next night he sends again, and then who should be his messenger to Mansoul but the terrible Captain Sepulcher; so Captain Sepulcher came to the walls of Mansoul, and made his oration to the town.

*Mansoul summoned by Captain Sepulcher.* "O ye inhabitants of the rebellious town of Mansoul! I summon you in the name of the Prince Diabolus, that, without any more ado, you set open the gates of your town, and admit the great Lord to come in. But if you shall still rebel, when we have taken to us the town by force, we will swallow you up as the grave: wherefore, if you will hearken to my summons, say so, and if not, then let me know.

"The reason of this my summons, quoth he, is for that my Lord is your undoubted Prince and Lord, as you yourselves have formerly owned: nor shall that assault, which was given to my Lord when Emanuel dealt so dishonourable by him, prevail with him to loose his right, and so forbear to attempt to recover his own. Consider then O Mansoul! with thyself; wilt thou shew thyself peaceable or not? If thou shalt quickly yield up thyself, than our old friendship shall be renewed; but if thou shalt refuse and rebel, then expect nothing but fire and sword."

When the languishing town of Mansoul had heard this summoner and his summons, they were yet more put to their dumps, but made to the Captain no answer at all, so away he went as he came.

*They address themselves to their good Lord Secretary.* But after some consultation among themselves, as also with some of their Captains, they applied themselves afresh to the Lord Secretary for council and advice from him; for this Lord Secretary was their chief preacher (as also was mentioned some pages before) only now he was ill at ease, and of him they begged favour in those two or three things.

1. That

1. That he would look comfortably upon them, and not keep himself so much retired from them as formerly. Also, that he would be prevailed with to give them a hearing, while they should make known their miserable condition to him. But to this he told them as before, 'That as yet he was but ill at ease, and therefore could not do as he had formerly done.'

2. That he would be pleased to give them his advice about their now so important affairs, for that Diabolus was come and set down before the town, with no less than twenty thousand Doubters. They said moreover, that both he and his Captains were cruel men, and that they were afraid of them. But to this he said, You must look to the law of the Prince, and there see what is laid upon you to do.'

3. Then they desired that his highness would help them to frame a petition to Shaddai, and unto Emanuel his son, and that he would set his own hand thereto, as a token that he was one with them in it; 'For, said they, my Lord, many a one have we sent, but can get no answer of peace; but now surely one, with thy hand unto it, may obtain good for Mansoul.'

But all the answer that he gave to this was, 'That they had offended their Emanuel, and had also grieved himself, and that therefore they must, as yet partake of their own devices. *The cause of his being ill at ease.*

This answer of the Lord secretary, fell like a millstone upon them; yea, it crushed them so, that they could not tell what to do, yet they durst not comply with the demands of Diabolus, nor with the demands of his Captains. So then here were the straits that the town of Mansoul was betwixt, when the enemy came upon her; her foes were ready to swallow her up, and her friends did forbear to help her. *The sad straits of Mansoul.*

Then stood up my Lord Mayor, whose name was my Lord understanding, and he began to pick and pick, until he had pickt comfort out of that seemingly bitter saying of the Lord secretary: for thus he discanted upon it; For, said he, this unavoidably follows upon the saying of my Lord's 'That we must yet suffer for our sins.' But, quoth he, *A comment upon the Lord* 'the

*Secretary's  
speech.*

'the word's yet sound, as if at last we should be saved from our enemies, and that after a few more sorrows, Emanuel will come and be our help. Now the Lord Mayor was the more critical in his dealing with the Secretary's words, none of his words were such, but that at all times they were most exactly significant, and the townsmen were allowed to pry into them, and to expound them to their best advantage.

So they took their leaves of my Lord, and returned, and went, and came to the Captains, to whom they did tell what my Lord high Secretary had said, who, when they had heard it, were all of the same opinion as my Lord Mayor himself: the Captains therefore began to take some courage unto them, and prepare to make some brave attempt upon the camp of the enemy, and to destroy all that were Diabolians, with the roving Doubters that the tyrant had brought with him, to destroy the poor town of Mansoul.

*The town of  
Mansoul in  
order.* So all betook themselves forthwith to their places, the Captains to theirs, the Lord Mayor to his, the Subordinate preacher to his, and my Lord Willbewill to his. The

Captains longed to be at some work for their Prince, for they delighted in warlike achievements. The next day therefore they came together and consulted, and after consultation had, they resolved to give an answer to the Captain of Diabolus with slings; and so they did at the rising of the sun on the morrow: for Diabolus had ventured to come nearer again, but the sling stones were to him and his like hornets. For as there is nothing to the town of Mansoul so terrible as the roaring of Diabolus's drum; so there is nothing to Diabolus so terrible as the well playing of Emanuel's slings.

*Words appli-  
ed against  
him by faith.* Wherefore Diabolus was forced to make another retreat yet further off, from the famous town of Mansoul. Then did the Lord Mayor of Mansoul cause the bells to be rung, and that thanks should be sent to the Lord high Secretary, by the mouth of the subordinate preacher; for that by his words, the Captains and elders of Mansoul had been strengthened against Diabolus.

When Diabolus saw that his Captains and soldiers, high

Lords,



Lords, and renowned, were frightened, and beaten down, by the stones that came from the golden slings of the Prince of the town of Mansoul, he bethought himself, and said, 'I will try to catch them by fawning, I will try to flatter them into my net.'

Wherefore after a while, he came down again to the wall, not now with his drum, nor with Captain Sepulcher, but having all befugared his lips he seemed to be very sweet mouthed, peaceable Prince, designing nothing for humours sake, nor to be revenged on Mansoul for injuries by them done to him, but the welfare and good, and advantage of the town and people therein, was now, as he said, his only design. Wherefore after he had called for audience, and desired that the townsfolk would give it to him, he proceeded in his oration, and said:

"O! the desire of my heart, the famous town of Mansoul! how many nights have I watched, and how many weary steps have I taken, if, perhaps, I might do thee good; far be it, far be it from me, to desire to make war upon you; if ye will but willingly and quietly deliver up yourselves unto me. You know that you were mine of old. Remember also, that so long as you enjoined me for your Lord, and that I enjoined you

for my subjects, you wanted for nothing of all the delights of the earth, that I your Lord and prince could get for you: or that I could invent to make you bonny and blith withal: consider you never had so many hard, dark, troublesome and heart afflicting hours while you were mine, as you have had since you revolted from me: nor shall you have ever peace again, and I will grant

yea, enlarge your old charter, with abundance of privileges; so that your licence and liberty shall be, to take hold, enjoy, and make your own, all that is pleasant from the east to the west. Nor shall any of those incivilities wherewith you have offended me, be ever charged upon you by me, so long as the sun and moon endureth. Nor shall any of those dear friends of mine, that now for the

fear of you, lie lurking in dens, holes and caves in Mansoul, be hurtful to you any more; yea, they shall be your servants, and shall minister

*Diabolus  
changes his  
way.*

*Satan reads  
all back-  
wards.*

*Take heed  
Mansoul.*

*Sins.*

*The pleasure  
of sin.*

unto you of their substance, and of whatever shall come to hand. I need speak no more, you know them, and have sometimes since been much delighted in their company; why then should we abide at such odds? Let us renew our old acquaintance and friendship again.

“Bear with your friend, I take the liberty at this time to speak thus freely unto you. The love that I have to you presses me to do it, as also does the zeal of my heart from my friends with you; put me not to further trouble, nor yourselves to further fears and frights. Have you I will, in a way of peace or war; nor do you flatter yourselves with the power and force of your Captains, or that your Emanuel will shortly come into your help, for such strength will do you no pleasure.

“I am come against you with a stout and valiant army, and all the chief Princes of the den, are even at the head of it. Besides, my Captains are swifter than eagles, stronger than lions, and are more greedy of prey than are the evening wolves. What is Og of Bashan? What’s Goliath of Gath! what’s an hundred more of them to one of the least of my Captains? how then shall Mansoul think to escape my hand and force?”

Diabolus thus having ended his flattering, fawning, deceitful and lying speech to the famous town of Mansoul, the Lord Mayor replied upon him as follows:

*The Lord  
Mayor’s an-  
swer.* “O Diabolus Prince of darkness, and master of all deceit, thy lying flatteries we have had, and made sufficient probation of, and have tasted too deeply of that destruction cup already; should we therefore again hearken unto thee, and so break the commandments of our great Sdaddai, to join in affinity with thee; would not our Prince reject us, and cast us off for ever; and being cast off by him, can the place that he has prepared for thee, be a place of rest for us? Besides, O thou that art empty and void of all truth, we are rather ready to die by thy hand, than to fall in with thy flattering and lying deceits.”

When the tyrant saw that there was little to be got by parlying with my Lord Mayor, he fell into an hellish rage,

age, and resolved that again, with his army of Doubt-  
ers, he would another time assault the town of Mansoul.

So he called for his drummer, who beat up for his men,  
(and while he did beat, Mansoul did shake) to be in readi-  
ness to give battle to the corporation; then Diabolus

drew near with his army, and thus dispo-  
sed of his men. Captain Cruel and Captain *Feelgate.*

Torment, these he drew up and placed a-  
gainst Feelgate, and commanded them to sit down there  
for the war. And he also appointed, that

if need were, Captain Noeafe should come *Noefgate.*

into their relief. At Noefgate he placed  
Captain Brimstone, and Captain Sepulcher, and bid them

look well to their ward on that side of the  
town of Mansoul. But at Eye-gate he placed *Eye gate.*

that grim faced one Captain Pasthope, and  
there also he did set his terrible standard.

Now Captain Insatiable he was to look to the carria-  
ges of Diabolus, and was also appointed to take into  
custody, that, or those persons and things should at any  
time, as prey, be taken from the enemy.

Now Mouthgate the inhabitants of Man- *Mouthgate.*

soul kept for a sally port, wherefore that  
they kept strong, for that was it, by, and out at which  
the townsfolk did send their petitions to Emanuel their  
Prince, that also was the gate, from the top of which the  
Captains did play their slings at the enemies, for that  
gate stood somewhat ascending, so that the placing of them  
there, and the letting of them fly from that

place, did most execution against the tyrant's *The use of*  
army; wherefore for these causes with o- *Mouthgate.*

thers, Diabolus sought, if possible, to stop up  
Mouthgate with dirt.

Now as Diabolus was busy and industrious in prepar-  
ing to make his assault upon the town of Mansoul with-  
out, so the Captains and soldiers in the corporation, were  
as busy in preparing within; they mounted their slings,  
they set up their banners, they sounded their trumpets,  
and put themselves in such order as was judged most for  
the annoyance of the enemy, and for the advantage of  
Mansoul, and gave to their soldiers orders to be ready  
at the sound of the trumpet for war. The Lord Will-  
bewill also, he took the charge of watching against the



rebels within, and to do what he could to take them without, or to stifle them within their caves, dens and holes in the town wall of Mansoul. And, to speak the truth to him, ever since he did penance for his fault, he has shewn

*Jolly and Greggish taken and executed.* as much honesty and bravery of spirit, as any man in Mansoul; for he took one jolly and one Greggish brother Greggish, the two sons of his servant Harmless mirth, (for to that day, though the father was committed to ward, the son had a dwelling in the house of my Lord)

say he took them, and with his own hands put them on the cross. And this was the reason why he hanged them up after their father, was put unto the hands of Mr. Trueman the jaylor; they, his sons, began to play their pranks and to be tickling and towing with the daughters of the Lord; nay, it was jealousied that they were too familiar with them, the which was brought to his Lordship's ear. Now his Lordship being unwilling unadvisedly to put any man to death, did not suddenly fall upon them, but sent watch and spies to see if the thing was true, of the which he was soon informed, for his two servants, whose names were Findout and Tellall, catch'd them together in an uncivil manner more than once or twice, and went and told the Lord. So when my Lord Willbewill had sufficient ground to believe the thing was true, he takes the two young Diabolians, for such they were, for their father was a Diabolian born, and has the

*The place of their execution.* to Eyegate, where he raised a very high cross just in the face of Diabolus and his army, and there he hanged the young villains in defiance to Captain Pashope, and of the horrible standard of the tyrant.

Now this christian act of the brave Lord Willbewill did greatly abash Captain Pashope, discouraged the army of Diabolus, put fear into the Diabolian runagates in Mansoul, and put strength and courage into the Captains that belonged to Emanuel

*Mortification of sin is a sign of hope of life.* the Prince, for they without did gather, and that by this very act of my Lord, that Mansoul was resolved to fight, and that the Diabolians within the town could not do such things as Diabolus had hoped they would. Nor was this the only proof of the brave Lord Willbewill's honesty to

the

the town, nor of his loyalty to his Prince, as will afterwards appear.

Now when the children of Prudent thrifty, who dwelt with Mr. Mind, for Thrifty left children with Mr. Mind when he was also committed to prison, and their names were Gripe and Rakeall, these he begot of

Mr. Mind's bastard daughter, whose name was Mrs. Holdfastbad, I say when his children perceived how the Lord Willbewill had served them that dwelt with him, what do they then but least they should drink of the same cup, endeavour to make their escape? but Mr. Mind being wary of it, took them and put them in hold in his house till morning (for this was done over night) and remembering that by the law of Mansoul all Diabolians were to die; and to be sure they were at least by father's side such, and some say by mother's side too; what does he, but takes them and puts them in chains, and carries them to the self same place where my Lord hanged his two before, and there he hanged them.

*Mr. Mind  
plays the  
man.*

The townsmen also took great encouragement at this act of Mr. Mind, and did what they could to have taken some more of these Diabolian troublers of Mansoul;

*Mansoul set  
against the  
Diabolians.*

but at that time the rest lay so close and quiet, that they could not be apprehended; so they set against them a diligent watch, and went every man to his place.

I told you a little before, that Diabolus and his army were somewhat abash'd and discouraged at the sight of what my Lord Willbewill did, when he hanged up these two young Diabolians; but his discouragement quickly turned itself into furious madness and rage against the town of Mansoul, and fight it he would. Also, the townsmen and Captains within, they had their hopes and their expectation heightened, believing at last the day would be theirs, so they feared them the less. The Subordinate Preacher too made a sermon about it, and he took that theme for his text. 'Gad, a troop shall overcome him, but he shall overcome at the last.' Whence he shewed that though Mansoul should be sorely put to it at the first, yet the victory should most certainly be Mansoul's at last.

*Diabolus's  
kindness  
turned into  
furious mad-  
ness.*

So Diabolus commanded that his drummer should be in a charge against the town, and the Captains also that were in the town sounded a charge against them, but they had no drum, they were trumpets of silver which they sounded against them. Then they which were of the camp

*With heart  
and mouth.*

Diabolus came down to the town to take and the Captains in the castle, with their slingers at Mouthgate, played upon them again. And now there was nothing heard in the camp of Diabolus but horrible rage and blasphemy; but in the town good words, prayer, and singing of psalms; the enemy replied with horrible objections and the terribleness of their drum, but the town made answer with the flapping of their slings, and the melodious noise of their trumpets. And thus the fight lasted for several days together, only now and then they had some small intermission, in the which the townsmen refreshed themselves, and the Captains made ready for another assault.

The Captains of Emanuel were clad in silver armour, and the soldiers in that which was of proof; the soldiers of Diabolus were clad in iron, which was made to give place to Emanuel's engine shot. In the town some were hurt and some were greatly wounded. Now the worst of it was, a surgeon was scarce in Mansoul, for that Emanuel at present was absent. Howbeit, with the leaves of a tree the wounded were kept from dying, yet their wounds did greatly putrify, and some did grievously stink. Of the townsmen these were wounded, to wit.

*Who of Mansoul were wounded.*

My Lord reason he was wounded in the head; and my Lord Mayor in the eye.

Another that was wounded was Mr. Mind, he received his wound about the stomach.

The honest Subordinate Preacher also, he received a shot not far off the heart, but none of these were mortal.

*Hop-ful  
thoughts.*

Many also of the inferior sort were not only wounded but slain outright.

*Who in the  
camp of Diabolus were  
wounded  
and slain.*

Now in the camp of Diabolus were wounded and slain, a considerable number. For instance.

Captain rage he was wounded, and so was Captain Cruel.

Captain Damnation was made to retreat, and to intrench himself further off Mansoul; the



the standard also of Diabolus was beaten down, and his standard bearer, Captain Muchhurt, had his brains beat out with a sling stone, to the no little grief and shame of his Prince Diabolus.

Many also of the Doubters were slain outright, though enough of them are left alive to make Mansoul shake and totter. Now the victory that day being turned to Mansoul, did put greater valour into the towns-men and Captains, and did cover Diabolus's camp with a clod, but withal it made them far more furious. So the next day Mansoul rested, and commanded that the bells should be rung, the trumpets also joyfully sounded, and the Captains shouted round the town.

My Lord Willbewill also was not idle, but did notable service within, against the domesticks or the Diabolians that were in the town, not only by keeping of them in awe, for he lighted on one at last, whose name was Mr. Anything, a fellow of whom mention was made before; for 'twas he, if you remember, that brought the three fellows to Diabolus, whom the Diabolians took out of Captain Boanerges's companies, and that periwaded them to list themselves under the tyrant to fight against the army of Shaddai; my Lord Willbewill did also take a notable Diabolian, whose name was Loosefoot; this Loosefoot was a scout to the vagabonds in Mansoul, and that did use to carry tidings out of Mansoul to the camp, and out of the camp to those of the enemies in Mansoul; but these my Lord sent away safe to Mr. Trueman the jailor, with a commandment to keep them in irons; for he intended then to have them out to be crucified, when 'twould be for the best to the corporation, and most for the discouragement of the camp of the enemies.

My Lord Mayor also, though he could not stir about so much as formerly, because of the wound that he lately received, yet gave he out orders to all that were the natives of Mansoul, to look to their watch and stand upon their guard, and as occasion should offer, to prove themselves men.

*The victory  
did turn that  
day to Man-  
soul.*

*My Lord  
Willbewill  
taketh one  
Anything  
and one  
Loosefoot and  
committeeth  
them to  
ward.*

*The Captains  
consult to fall  
upon the ene-  
my.*

Mr. Conscience the preacher, he also did his utmost to keep all his good documents alive upon the hearts of the people of Mansoul.

Well, a while after, the Captains, and stout ones of the town of Mansoul agreed, and resolved upon a time to make a sally out upon the camp of Diabolus, and this must be done in the night; and there was the folly of Mansoul (for the night is always the best for the enemy, but the worst for Mansoul to fight in) but yet they would do it, their courage was so high; their last victory also still stuck in their memories.

*They fight in the night who do lead the van.*

So the night appointed being come, the Prince's brave Captains cast lots who should lead the van in this new and desperate expedition against Diabolus, and against his Diabolian army, and the Lot fell to Cap-

tain Credence, to Captain Experience, and to Captain Goodhope to lead the Forlornhope. This Captain Ex-

*How they fall on.*

perience the Prince created such when himself did reside in the town of Mansoul: so, as I said, they made their sally out upon the army that lay in the siege against them;

and their hap was to fall in with the main body of their enemies. Now Diabolus and his men being expertly accustomed to night work, took the alarm presently, and were as ready to give them battle as if they had sent them word of their coming. Wherefore to it they went amain, and blows were hard on every side, the hell drum also was beat most furiously, while the trumpets of the Prince most sweetly sounded. And thus the battle was joined, and Captain Insatiable looked to the enemies carriages, and waited when he should receive some prey.

*They fight bravely.*

The Prince's Captains fought it stoutly, beyond what indeed could be expected they should; they wounded many, they made the whole army of Diabolus to make a re-

treat. But I cannot tell how, but the brave Captain Credence, Captain Goodhope, and Captain Experience, as they were upon the pursuit, cutting down, and following hard after the enemy in the rear, Captain Credence

*Captain Credence hurt.*

stumbled and fell, by which fall he caught so great a hurt, that he could not rise, till Captain Experience did help him up, at

which

which their men were put in disorder; the Captain also was so full of pain, that he could not forbear but aloud to cry out; at this the other two Captains fainted, supposing that Captain Credence had received his mortal wound; their men also were more disordered, and had no list to fight. Now Diabolus being very observing, though at this time as yet he was put to the worst, perceiving that an halt was made among the men that were the pursuers, what does he, but take it for granted, that the Captains were either wounded or dead; he therefore at first makes a stand, then faces about, and so comes up upon the Prince's army, with as much of his fury as hell could help him to, and his hap was to fall in just among the three Captains, Captain Credence, Captain Goodhope, and Captain Experience, and did cut, wound, and pierce them so dreadfully, and what through discouragement, what through disorder, and what through the wounds that now they had received, and also the loss of much blood, they scarce were able, though they had for their power the three best bands in Mansoul to get safe into the hold again.

*The rest of  
the Captains  
faint.*

*Diabolus  
takes cou-  
rage.*

*The Prince's  
forces beaten.  
Satan some-  
times makes  
saints eat  
their words.*

*Diabolus  
flushed.*

*He demands  
the town.*

Now when the body of the Prince's army saw how these three Captains were put to the worst, they thought it their wisdom to make as safe and good a retreat as they could, and so returned by the sally port again, and so there was an end of this present action. But Diabolus was so flushed with the night's work, that he promised himself, in few days, an easy and compleat conquest over the town of Mansoul; wherefore, on the day following, he comes up to the sides thereof with great boldness, and demands entrance, and that forthwith they deliver themselves up to his government. The Diabolians too that were within, they began to be somewhat brisk as we shall shew afterwards.

But the valiant Lord Mayor replied, that what he must get by force, for as long as Emanuel their Prince was alive (though he at present was not so with them as they

*The Lord  
Mayor's an-  
swer.*

wilht.



wisht) they should never consent to yield Mansoul up to another.

*Brave Will-  
bewill's  
speech.*

And with that the Lord Willbewill stood up, and said, "Diabolus, thou master of the den, and enemy to all that is good, we poor inhabitants of the town of Mansoul, are too well acquainted with thy rule and government, and with the end of these things, that for certain will follow submitting to thee to do it. Wherefore though a while we were without knowledge we suffered thee to take us (as the bird that saw not the snare fell into the hands of the fowler) yet since we have been turned from darkness to light, we have also been turned from the power of Satan to God. And though through thy subtilty, and also the subtilty of the Diabolians within, we have sustained much loss, and also plunged ourselves into much perplexity, yet get up yourselves, lay down our arms, and yield to so horrid a tyrant as thou, we shall not; die upon the place we chuse rather to do. Besides we have hopes, that in time, deliverance will come from court unto us, and therefore we yet will maintain a war against thee."

*The Captains  
encouraged.* This brave speech of the Lord Willbewill, with that also of the Lord Mayor, did somewhat abate the boldness of Diabolus, though it kindled the fury of his rage.

It also succoured the townsmen and Captains; yea, it was as a plaister to the brave Captain Credence his wound; for you must know that a brave speech now, when the Captains of the town, with their men of war, came home routed, and when the enemy took courage and boldness at the success that he had obtained to draw up to the walls and demand entrance, as he did, was in season, and also advantageous.

The Lord Willbewill also did play the man within, for while the Captain and soldiers were in the field, he was in arms in the town, and wherever by him there was a Diabolian found, they were forced to feel the weight of his heavy hand, and also the edge of his penetrating sword; many therefore of the Diabolians he wounded, as the Lord Cavel, the Lord Brisk, the Lord Pragmatick, and the Lord Murmur; several also of the meaner sort he did sorely maim, though there cannot at this time an account be given you of any that he slew outright. The cause,

rather the advantage that my Lord Willbewill had at this time to do thus, was, for that the Captains were gone out to fight the enemy in the field. For now thought the Diabolians within, is our time to stir and make an uproar in the town: what do they therefore but quickly get themselves into a body, and fall forthwith in a hurricaning in Mansoul, as if now nothing *Willbewill's* but whirlwind and tempest should be there; *gallantry*. wherefore, as I said, he takes his opportunity to fall in among them with his men, cutting and slashing with courage that was undaunted, at which the Diabolians, with all haste, dispersed themselves to their holds and my Lord to his place as before.

This brave act of my Lord did somewhat revenge the wrong done by Diabolus to the Captains, and also did let them know, that Mansoul was not to be parted with for the loss of a victory or two; wherefore the wing of the tyrant was clipt again, as to boasting, I mean in comparison of what he would have done, if the Diabolians had put the town to the same plight to which he had put the Captains.

*Nothing  
like faith  
to crush  
Diabolus.*

Well, Diabolus yet resolves to have the other bout with Mansoul, for, thought he, since I beat them once I may beat them twice; wherefore he commanded his men to be ready at such an hour of the night to make a fresh assault upon the town, and he gave it out in special, that they should bend all their force against Feelgate, and attempt to break into the town through that: The word that then he did give to his officers and soldiers was Hellfire. And, said he, if we break in upon them, as I wish we do, either with some, or with all our force, let them that break in look to it, that they forget not the word. And let nothing be heard in the town of Mansoul, but Hell fire, Hell fire, Hell fire. The drummer was also to beat without ceasing and the standard bearers were to display their colours; the soldiers too, were to put on what courage they could, and to see that they played manfully their parts against the town.

*He tries  
what he can  
do upon the  
sense and  
felling of the  
Christian.*

So the night was come, and all things by the tyrant made ready for the work, he suddenly makes his assault upon

upon Feelgate, and after he had a while struggled there he throws the gate wide open. For the truth is, those gates were but weak, and so most easily made to yield. When Diabolus had thus far made his attempt, he placed his Captains, to wit, Torment and Noease there; so he attempted to press forward, but the Prince's Captains came down upon him, and made his entrance more difficult than he desired. And to speak truth, they made

*When those  
three Cap-  
tains are dis-  
abled what  
can the rest  
do for the  
town of Man-  
soul.*

what resistance they could; but the three of their best and most valiant Captains being wounded, and by their wounds made much incapable of doing the town that service they would, (and all the rest having more than their hands full of the Doubters, and their Captains that did follow Diabolus) they were overpowered with force, nor could they keep them out of the town: Wherefore the Prince's men and their Captains

betook themselves to the castle, as to the strong hold of the town, and partly, or rather chiefly to preserve to Emanuel the prerogative royal of Mansoul, for so was the castle of Mansoul.

The Captains therefore being fled into the castle, the enemy without much resistance, possess themselves of the rest of the town, and spreading themselves as they went, into every corner, they cried out as they marched, according to the command of the tyrant, "Hell fire, Hell fire, Hell fire;" so that nothing could be heard, but the direful noise of Hell fire, together with the roaring of Diabolus's drum. And now did the clouds

*The sad  
fruits of  
apostacy.*

hang black over Mansoul, nor to reason, did any thing but ruin seem to attend it. Diabolus also quartered his soldiers in the houses of the inhabitants of the town of Mansoul.

Yea, the subordinate preacher's house, was as full of these outlandish Doubters as ever it could hold; and so was my Lord Mayor's and my Lord Willbewill's also: yea, where was there a corner, a cottage, a barn, or a hogsty, that now was not full of these vermin? Yea, they turned the men of the town out of their houses and would lie in their beds, and sit at their tables themselves. Ah, poor Mansoul! now thou feelest the fruits of sin, and what venom was in the flattering words of Mr. Carnal

Security!



security! They made a great havock of whatever they laid their hands on; yea, they fired the town in several places; many young children also were by them dashed in pieces: yea, those that were yet unborn, they destroyed in their mothers wombs; for you must think that it could not now be otherwise; for what conscience, what pity, what bowels or compassion can any expect at the hands of outlandish Doubters? Many in Mansoul that were women, both young and old, they forced, ravished, and beast like abused, so that they swooned, miscarried, and many of them died, and so lay at the top of every street, and in all by-places of the town.

And now did Mansoul seem to be nothing but a den of dragons, an emblem of hell, and a place of total darkness. Now did Mansoul lie, almost like the barren wilderness; nothing but nettles, briars, thorns, weeds and stinking things, seemed now to cover the face of Mansoul. I told you before, how that those Diabolian Doubters turned the men of Mansoul out of their beds, and now I will add, they wounded them, they mauled them, yea, and almost brained many of them, many, did I say, yea, most, if not all, of them. Mr. Conscience they so wounded, yea, and his wounds so festered, that he could have no ease day nor night, but lay as if continually upon a rack (but that Shaddai rules all, certainly they had slain him outright) my Lord Mayor they so abused, that they almost put out his eyes; and had not my Lord Willbewill got into the castle, they intended to have chopt him all to pieces, for they did look upon him, as his heart now stood, to be one of the very worst that was in Mansoul against Diabolus and his crew. And indeed he hath shewed himself a man, and more of his exploits you will hear of afterwards.

Now a man might have walked for many days together in Mansoul, and scarce have seen one in the town that looked like a religious man. Oh the fearful state of Mansoul now! now every corner swarmed with

T

*Guilt. Good  
and ten  
thoughts.*

*Ho'y concep-  
tions of good.*

*Rest.*

*Sad work a-  
mong the  
townsmen.*

*Satan has  
a particular  
spite against  
a sanctified  
Will.*

*Thought.*

*The soul full  
of idle  
outlandish*

*thoughts and blasphemies.* outlandish Doubters; red coats and black coats walked the town by clusters, and

led up all the houses with hideous noise, vain songs, lying stories, and blasphemous language against Shaddai and his son. Now all those Diabolians that lurked in the walls, and dens, and holes that were in the town of Mansoul, came forth and shewed themselves; yea, walked with open face in company with the Doubters that were in Mansoul; yea, they had more boldness now to walk the streets, to haunt the houses, and to shew themselves abroad, than had any of the honest inhabitants of the now woful town of Mansoul.

But Diabolus and his outlandish men were not at peace in Mansoul, for they were not there entertained as were the Captains and forces of Emanuel; the townsmen did brow-beat them what they could: Nor did they partake or make destruction of any of the necessities of Mansoul, but that which they seized on against the townsmen's will, what they could they hid from them, and what they could not they had with an ill will. They, poor hearts, had rather have had their room than their company: but they were at present their captives; and their captives, for the present, they were forced to be. But, I say, they discountenanced them as much as they were able, and shewed them all the dislike that they could.

The Captains also from the castle did hold them in continual play with their slings, to the chafing and fretting of the minds of the enemies; true, Diabolus made a great many attempts to have broken open the gates of the castle, but Godlyfear was made the keeper of

*Mr. Godlyfear is made keeper of the castle gates.*

that; and he was a man of courage, conduct, and valour, that 'twas in vain, as long as life lasted within him, to think to do that work, though most desired; wherefore all the attempts that Diabolus made against him were fruitless; I have wished sometimes that that man had had the whole rule of the town of Mansoul.

*The town of Mansoul the seat of War.*

Well, this was the condition of the town of Mansoul for about two years and a half; the body of the town was the seat of war; the people of the town were driven into holes, and the glory of Mansoul was laid in

dust; what rest then could be to the inhabitants, what  
 peace could Mansoul have, and what sun could shine upon  
 it? Had the enemy lain so long without in the plain a-  
 gainst the town, it had been enough to have famished  
 them, but now when they shall be within, when the town  
 shall be their tent, their trench, and fort against the  
 castle that was in the town; when the town shall be against  
 the town, and shall serve to be a defence to the enemies  
 of her strength and life: I say, when they shall make use  
 of the forts and town holds, to secure them-

selves in, even till they shall take spoil and de- *Heart:*  
 molish the castle; this was terrible, and yet  
 this was now the state of the town of Mansoul.

After the town of Mansoul had been in this sad and la-  
 mentable condition, for so long a time as I have told you,  
 and no petitions that they presented their Prince with all  
 this while, could prevail; the inhabitants of the town, to-  
 with, the elders and chief of Mansoul gathered together,  
 and after some time spent in condoling their miserable  
 state, and this miserable judgment coming

upon them, they agreed together to draw *Mr. Godly-*  
 up yet another petition, and to send it away *fear's advice*  
 to Emanuel for relief; but Mr. Godlyfear *about draw-*  
 stood up and answered, That he knew that *ing up a*  
 his Lord the Prince never did, nor ever *petition to*  
 would receive a petition for these matters *the Prince.*

from the hand of any whoever, unless the  
 Lord Secretary's hand was to it, and this, quoth he, is  
 the reason that you prevailed not all this while. Then  
 said they, they would draw up one, and get the Lord Se-  
 cretary's hand unto it. But Mr. Godlyfear answered a-  
 gain, that he knew also, that the Lord Secretary would  
 set his hand to any petition that himself had no hand in  
 composing and drawing up; and besides, said he, the  
 Prince doth know my Lord Secretary's hand from all  
 the hands in the world; wherefore he cannot be deceived  
 by any pretence whatever; wherefore my advice is, that  
 you go to my Lord, and implore him to lend you his  
 aid: now he did yet abide in the castle where all the Cap-  
 tains and men at arms were.

So they heartily thanked Mr. Godlyfear, took his coun-  
 sel, and did as he had bidden them; so they went and



came to my Lord, and made known the cause of their coming to him, to wit, that since Mansoul was in so deplorable a condition, his highness would be pleased to undertake to draw up a petition for them to Emanuel, the son of the mighty Shaddai, and to their King and his father by him.

*The Secretary employed to draw up a petition for Mansoul.*

Then said the Secretary to them, What petitions is it that you would have me draw up for you? But they said, Our Lord knows best the state and condition of the town of Mansoul, and how we are backslidden and degenerated from the Prince; thou also knowest who is come up to war against us, and how Mansoul is now the seat of war. My Lord knows moreover, what barbarous usage our men, women, and children have suffered at their hands; and how our homebred Diabolians do walk now with more boldness than dare the townsmen in the streets of Mansoul. Let our Lord therefore, according to the wisdom of God that is in him, draw up a petition for his poor servants to our Prince Emanuel. 'Well, (said the Lord Secretary) I will draw up a petition for you, and will also set my hand thereto.' Then said they, But when shall we call for it at the hand of the Lord? But he answered and said, 'Your selves must be present at the doing of it; yea, you must put your desires to it. True, the hand and pen shall be mine, but the ink and paper must be yours, else how can you say it is your petition? Nor have I need to petition for myself, because I have not offended.

*The petition drawn up and sent to Emanuel by the hand of Captain Credence.*

So they did heartily agree with the sentence of the Lord, and a petition was forthwith drawn up for them. But now who should carry it, that was the next. But the Secretary advised that Captain Credence should carry it, for he was a well spoken Man. They therefore called for him, and propounded to him the business. 'Well, said the Captain, I gladly accept of the motion and though I am lame, I will do this business for you with as much speed, and as well as I can.

*The contents of their petition.*

The contents of the petition were to this purpose. 'O our Lord and sovereign Prince Emanuel, the potent, the long suffering Prince

Prince : grace is powered into thy lips, and to thee belongs mercy and forgiveness, though we have rebelled against thee. We who are no more worthy to be called thy Mansoul, nor yet fit to partake of common benefits, do beseech thee, and thy father by thee, to do away our transgressions. We confess that thou mightest cast us away for them, but do it not for thy name's sake ; let the Lord rather take an opportunity at our miserable condition, to let out his bowels and compassion to us : we are compassed on every side, Lord our own backslidings reprove us ; our Diabolians within our town fright us, and the army of the Angel of the bottomless pit distresses us. Thy grace can be our salvation, and whither to go but to thee we know not.

\* Furthermore, O gracious Prince, we have weakened our Captains, and they are discouraged, sick, and of late some of them grievously worsted, and beaten out of the field by the power and force of the tyrant. Yea, even those of our Captains, in whose valour we did formerly use to put most of our confidence, they are as wounded men. Besides, Lord, our enemies are lively, and they are strong ; they vaunt and boast themselves, and do threaten to part us amon themselves for a booty. They are fallen also upon us, Lord, with many thousand Doubters, such as with whom we cannot tell what to do ; they are all grim looked, and unmerciful ones, and they bid defiance to us and thee.

\* Our wisdom is gone, our power is gone, because thou art departed from us ; nor have we what we may call ours but sin, shame and confusion of face for sin. Take pity upon us, O Lord, take pity upon us, thy miserable town of Mansoul, and save us out of the hands of our enemies. Amen.

This petition as was touched before, was handed by the Lord Secretary, and carried to the court by the brave and most stout Captain Credence. Now he carried it out at Mouthgate, for that, as I said, was the salliport of the town, and he went and came to Emanuel with it. Now how it came out I do not know, but for certain it did, and that so far as to reach the ears of Diabolus. Thus I conclude, because that the tyrant had it presently by the end, and charged the town of Mansoul with it, saying, \* Thou rebellious and stubborn-hearted Satan can-

Mansoul

*not abide  
prayer.*

Mansoul, I will make thee to leave off petitioning; art thou yet for petitioning? I will make thee to live." Yea, he also knew who the messenger was that carried the petition to the Prince, and it made him both to fear and rage.

Wherefore he commanded that his drum should be beat again, a thing that Mansoul could not abide to hear; but when Diabolus will have his drum beat, Mansoul must abide the noise. Well, the drum was beat, and the Diabolians were gathered together.

Then said Diabolus, "O ye stout Diabolians, be it known unto you, that there is a treachery hatched against us in the rebellious town of Mansoul; for albeit, the town is in our possession, as you see, yet these miserable Mansculians have attempted to dare, and have been so hardy as yet to send to the court to Emanuel for help. This I give you to understand, that ye may yet know how to carry it to the wretched town of Mansoul. Wherefore, O my trusty Diabolians, I command, that yet more and more ye distress this town of Mansoul, and vex it with your wiles, ravish their women, deflower their virgins, slay their children, brain their ancestors, fire their town, and what other mischief you can, and let this be the reward of the Mansculians from me, for their desperate rebellions against me."

*Posr. Mansoul.*

This you see was the charge, but something slept in betwixt that and execution, for as yet there was but little more done than to rage.

Moreover, when Diabolus had done thus, he went the next way up to the castle-gates, and demanded that, upon pain of death, the gates should be opened to him, and that entrance should be given him and his men that followed after; to whom Mr. Godlyfear replied, (for he it was that had the charge of that gate), "That the gate

*Satan cannot abide  
faith.*

should not be opened unto him, nor to the men that followed after him." He said moreover, "That Mansoul when she had suffered a while, should be made perfect, strengthened and settled." Then said Diabolus, "Deliver me then the men that have petitioned against me, especially Captain Credence that carried it to your Prince, deliver



deliver that varlet into my hands, and I will depart from the town."

Then upstarts a Diabolian, whose name *Mr. Fooling* was Mr. Fooling, and said, "My Lord offereth you fair, 'tis better for you that one man perish, than that your whole Mansoul should be undone."

But Mr. Godlyfear made him this replication, "How long will Mansoul be kept out of the dungeons, when she hath given up her faith to Diabolus? As good lose the town as lose Captain Credence, for if one be gone the other must follow." But to that Mr. Fooling said nothing.

Then did my Lord Mayor reply, and said, "O thou devouring tyrant, be it known unto *Diabolus* thee, we shall hearken to none of thy words, *rages*. we are resolved to resist thee as long as a Captain, a man, a sling, and a stone to throw at thee, shall be found in the town of Mansoul." But Diabolus answered, "Do you hope, do you wait, do you look for help and deliverance? You have sent to Emanuel, but your wickedness sticks too close in your skins to let innocent prayers come out of your lips. Think you, that you shall be prevailers, and prosper in this design? You will fail in your wish, you will fail in your attempts; for 'tis not only I but your Emanuel is against you. Yea, it is he that hath sent me against you to subdue you; for what then do you hope, or by what means will you escape?"

Then said the Lord Mayor, "We have sinned indeed, but that shall be no help to thee, for our Emanuel hath said it, and that in great faithfulness. And him that cometh to me, I will in no wise cast out. He hath also told us (O our enemy!) that all manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven to the sons of men. Therefore we dare not despair, but will look for, wait for, and hope for deliverance still." *The Lord Mayor's speech just at the time of the return of Captain Credence.*

Now by this time Captain Credence was returned, and come from the court from Emanuel to the Castle of Mansoul, and he returned to them with a packet. So my Lord Mayor hearing that Captain Credence was come, withdrew.

withdrew himself from the noise of the roaring of the tyrant, and left him to yell at the wall of the town, or against the gates of the castle. So he came up to the Captain's lodgings, and saluted him; he asked him of his welfare, and what was the best news at court? But when he asked Captain Credence that, the water stood in his eyes. Then said the Captain, Cheer up, my Lord, for all will be

*A sign of goodness.* well in time; and with that he first produced his pacquet, and laid it by; but that the Lord Mayor, and the rest of the Captains, took for a sign of good tydings. (Now a season of

grace being come, he sent for all the Captains and elders of the town, that were here and there in their lodgings in the castle, and upon their guard, to let them know that Captain Credence was returned from the court, and that he had something in general, and something in special to communicate to them.) So they all came up to him, and saluted him, and asked him concerning his journey, and likewise what was the best news at the court? and he answered them, as he had done the Lord Mayor before, that all would be well at last. Now when the

*The Pacquet opened.* Captain had thus saluted them, he opened his pacquet, and thence did draw out his several notes, for those he had sent for. And the first note was for my Lord Mayor, wherein was

signified:

*A note for my Lord Mayor.* "That the Prince Emanuel had taken it well, that my Lord Mayor had been so true and hasty in his office, and the great concern that lay upon him for the town and people of Mansoul. Also he bid him to know, that he took it well that he had been so bold for his Prince Emanuel, and had engaged so faithfully in his cause against Diabolus. He also signified at the close of his letter, that he should shortly receive his reward."

The second note that came out was for the noble Lord Willbewill, wherein there was signified, "That his Prince Emanuel did well understand how valient and courageous he had been for the honour of his Lord, now in his absence, and when his name was under contempt by Diabolus. There was signified also, that his Prince had taken it well, that he had been so

faithful

faithful to the town of Mansoul, in his keeping so strict a hand and eye over, and so strict a rein upon the necks of the Diabolians, that did still lie lurking, in their several holes, in the famous town of Mansoul.

He signified moreover, how that he understood that my Lord had, with his own hand, done great execution upon some of the chief of the rebels there, to the great discouragement of the adverse party, and to the good example of the whole town of Mansoul, and that shortly his Lordship should have his reward."

The third note came out from the Subordinate Preacher, wherein was signified, 'That his prince took it well from him, that he had so honestly, and so faithfully performed his office, and executed the trust committed to him by his Lord, while he exhorted, rebuked and forewarned Mansoul according to the laws of the town. He signified moreover, that he took well at his hand, that he called to fasting, to sackcloth and ashes, when Mansoul was under her revolt. Also, that he called for the aid of the Captain Boanerges to help in so weighty a work, and that shortly he also should receive his reward.'

*A note for the Subordinate Preacher.*

The fourth note came out for Mr. Godlyfear, wherein his Lord thus signified, "That his Lordship observed, that he was the first of all the men in Mansoul, that detected Mr. Carnal Security, as the only one that, thro' his subtilty and cunning had obtained for Diabolus a defection and decay of goodness in the blessed town of Mansoul. Moreover, his Lordship gave him to understand, that he still remembered his tears and mourning for the state of Mansoul. It was also observed, by the same note, that his Lord took notice of his detecting of this Mr. Carnal Security, at his own table, among his guests, in his own house, and that in the midst of his jolliness, even while he was seeking to perfect his villanies against the town of Mansoul. Emanuel also took notice, that this reverend person, Mr. Godlyfear, stood stoutly to it, at the gates of the castle, against all the threats and attempts of the tyrant, and that he had put the townsmen in a way to make their petition to their Prince, so as that he might accept thereof, and, as that they might obtain an answer of peace ;

*A note for Mr. Godlyfear.*



peace; and that therefore, shortly he should receive his reward."

After all this, there was yet produced a note which was written to the whole town of Mansoul; whereby they perceived. "That their Lord took notice of their so often repeating of petitions to him, and that they should see more of the fruits of such their doings in time to come. Their Prince did also therein tell them, That he took it well that their heart and mind, now at last, abode fixed upon him and his ways, though Diabolus had made such inroads upon them, and that neither flatteries on the one-hand, nor hardships on the other, could make them yield to his cruel designs." There was also inserted at the bottom of this note, "That his Lordship had left the town of Mansoul in the hands of the Lord Secretary, and under the conduct of Captain Credence, saying, Beware that you yet yield yourselves unto their governance, and in due time you shall receive your reward."

*Captain Credence retires to the Lord Secretary's lodgings.*

So after the brave Captain Credence had delivered his notes to those to whom they belonged, he retired himself to my Lord Secretary's lodgings, and there spends time in conversing with him; for they two were very great one with another, and did indeed know more how things would go in Mansoul, than did all the town besides. The Lord Secretary also loved the Captain Credence dearly; yea, many a good bit was sent him from my Lord's table; also he might have a shew of countenance, when the rest of Mansoul lay under the clouds; so after some time, for converse was spent, the Captain betook himself to his chambers to rest. But it was not long after, but my Lord did send for the Captain again; so the Captain came to him, and they greeted one another with usual salutations. Then said the Cap-

*Captain Credence made the Lord Lieutenant over all the forces in Mansoul.*

tain to the Lord Secretary, What hath my Lord to say to his servant? So the Lord Secretary took him and laid him aside, and after a sign or two of more favour, he said, 'I have made thee the Lord Lieutenant over all the forces in Mansoul; so that from this day forward, all men in Mansoul shall be at thy command, and thou shalt be

he.

he that shall lead in, and that shalt lead out Mansoul: thou shalt therefore manage, according to thy place, the war for thy Prince, and for the town of Mansoul, against the force and power of Diabolus, and at thy command shall the rest of the townsmen be.

Now the townsmen began to perceive what interest the Captain had, both with the court, and also with the Lord Secretary in Mansoul; for no man before could speed when sent, nor bring such good news from Emanuel as he; wherefore, what do they, after some lamentation, they made no more use of him in their distresses, but send, by their Subordinate preacher, to the Lord Secretary, to desire him, that all that ever they were worth and had, might be put under the government, care, custody, and conduct of Captain Credence.

So their preacher went and did his errand and received this answer from the mouth of his Lord, that Captain Credence should be the great doer in all the Kings army, against the King's enemies, and also for the welfare of Mansoul. So he bowed himself to the ground, and thanked his Lordship, and returned and told his news to the townsfolk. But all this was done with all imaginable secrecy, because the foes had yet great strength in the town. But,

*The town of Mansoul craves that she may be under the conduct of Captain Credence.*

To return to our story again: When Diabolus saw himself thus boldly confronted by the Lord Mayor, and perceived the stoutness of Mr. Godlyfear, he

fell into a rage, and forthwith called a council of war, that he might be revenged on Mansoul. So all the Princes of the pit came together, and old Incredulity on the head of them, with all the Captains of his army. So they consult what to do:

*Diabolus rages.*

now the effect and conclusion of the council that day, was how they might take the castle, because they could not conclude themselves masters of the town, so long as that was in the possession of their enemies. So one advised this way, and another advised that; but when they could not agree in their verdict, Apollyon, that president of the council stood up, and thus he began: 'My brotherhood (quoth he) I have two things to propound unto you, and my first is this, Let us withdraw ourselves from the town

*into*

into the plain again, for our presence here will do us no good, because the Castle is yet in our enemies hands, nor is it possible that we should take that, so long as so many brave Captains are in it, and that this bold fellow Godly-fear is made keeper of the gates of it.

‘ Now when we have withdrawn ourselves into the plain, they of their own accord will be glad of some little ease, and it may be, of their own accord, they again may be remiss, and even their so being, will give them

*Look to it* a greater blow than we can possibly give *Mansoul.* them ourselves. But if that should fail, our

going forth of the town may draw the Captains out after us, and you know what it cost them, when we fought them in the field before. Besides, can we but draw them out into the field, we may lay an ambush behind the town, which shall, when they are come forth abroad, rush in and take possession of the castle.’ But Beelzebub stood up and replied, saying, ‘ It is impossible to draw them all off from the castle; some, you may be sure, will lie there to keep that; wherefore it will be in vain thus to attempt, unless we was sure they would come out.’ He therefore concluded, That what was done, must be done by some other means.’ And the most likely means that the greatest of their heads could invent, was, that which Apollyon had advised to before, to wit, To get the townsmen again to sin. For, said he, ‘ It is not

our being in the town, nor in the field, nor *Look to it* our fighting, nor our killing of their men, *Mansoul.* that can make us the masters of Mansoul; for

so long as one in the town is able to lift up his finger against us, Emanuel will take their parts, and if he shall take their parts, we know what time a day it is with us. Wherefore for my part (quoth he) there is in my judgment, no way to bring them into bondage to us, like inventing a way to make them sin. Had we, said he, left all our Doubters at home, we had done as well as we have done now, unless we could have made them the masters and governors of the castle? for Doubters at a distance, are but like objections refell’d with arguments. Indeed can we but get them into the hold, and make them possessors of that, the day will be our own. Let us therefore withdraw ourselves into the plain, (not expecting that the Captains in Mansoul should follow us,) but yet, I say,



let us do this, and before we do so, let us advise with our trusty Diabolians that are yet in their holds in Mansoul, and set them to work to betray the town to us; for they indeed must do it, or it will be left undone for ever." By these sayings of Beelzebub, for I think it was he that gave this counsel) the whole conclave was forced to be of his opinion, to wit, that the way to get to the castle, was to get the town to sin. Then they fell to inventing by what means they might do this thing. *Look to it Mansoul.*

Then Lucifer stood up and said, 'The counsel of Beelzebub is pertinent; now the way to bring this to pass, in my opinion, is this; "Let us withdraw our force from the town of Mansoul, let us do this, and let us terrify them no more, either with summons or threats, or with the noise of our drum, or any other awakening means. Only let us lie in the field at a distance, and be as we regarded them not, (for frights I see do but awaken them, and make them more stand to their arms.) I have also another stratagem in my head, which is this, You know Mansoul is a market town, and a town that delights in commerce; what therefore, if some of our Diabolians shall feign themselves far countrymen, and shall go out and bring to the market of Mansoul some of our wares to sell, and what matter at what rates they sell their wares, though it be but half the worth. Now let those that yet shall trade in their market, be those that are witty and true to us, and I will lay my crown to pawn it will do. There are two that are come to my thoughts already, that I think will be arch in this work, and they are Mr. Penny-wise Pound-foolish, and Mr. Gerith'-hundred and Loseith'-shire; nor is this man with the long name at all inferior to the other. What also if you join with them Mr. Sweet-world, and Mr. Present-good, they are men that are civil and cunning, but our true friends and helpers. *Look to it Mansoul.* Let those, with as many more, ingage in this business for us, and let Mansoul be taken up in much business, and let them grow full and rich; and this is the way to get ground of them; remember ye not that thus we prevailed upon Laodicea, and how many at present do we hold in this snare? Now when they begin to grow full, they will forget their misery, and if we shall

U

not

not afright them, they may happen to fall asleep, and so be got to neglect their town watch, their castle watch, as well as their watch at the gates.

'Yea, may we not by this means, so cumber Mansoul with abundance, that they shall be forced to make of their castle a warehouse, instead of a garrison fortified against us, and a receptacle for men of war. Thus if we get our goods and commodities thither, I reckon the castle is more than half ours. Besides, could we so order it, that that should be filled with such kind of wares, then if we made a sudden assault upon them, it would be hard for the Captains to take shelter there. Do you not know that of the parable, 'The deceitfulness of riches choak the word;' and again, When the heart is overcharged with surfeiting and drunkenness, and the cares of this life, all mischiefs come upon them unawares.

'Furthermore, my Lords, (quoth he) you very well know, that it is not easy for a people to be filled with our things, and not to have some of our Diabolians as retainers to their houses and services. Where is a Mansoul that is full of this world, that has not for his servants and waiting men, Mr. Profuse, or Mr. Prodigality, or some other of our Diabolian gang, as Mr. Voluptuous, Mr. Pragmatical, Mr. Ostentation, or the like? Now these can take the castle of Mansoul, or blow it up, or make it unfit for a garrison for Emanuel, and any of these will do. Yea, these, for ought I know, may do it for us sooner than an army of twenty thousand men. Wherefore to end as I began, my advice is, that we quietly withdraw ourselves, not offering any further force, or forcible attempt upon the castle, at least at this present time, and let us set on foot our new project, and let us see if that will not make them destroy themselves.'

This advice was highly applauded by them all, and was accounted the very master piece of hell, to wit, 'To choak Mansoul with a fulness of this world, and to surfeit her heart with the good things thereof. But see how

things meet together; just as this Diabolian counsel was broken up, Captain Credence receives a letter from Emanuel, the contents of which was thus, "That upon the third day, he would meet them in the fields

*Captain  
Credence  
receives  
that from*

of

of the plains about Mansoul." Meet me in the field, (quoth the Captain) what meaneth my Lord by this? I know not what he meaneth by meeting of me in the field. So he took the note in his hand, and did carry it to my Lord Secretary, to ask his thoughts thereupon, (for my Lord was a Seer, in all matters concerning the King, and also for the good and comfort of the town of Mansoul.) So he shewed my Lord the note, and desired his opinion thereof. For my part, quoth Captain Credence, I know not the meaning thereof. So my Lord did take and read it, and after a little pause, he said "The Diabolians have had against Mansoul a great consultation to day: they have, I say, this day been contriving the utter ruin of the town; and the result of their counsel is, to set Mansoul in such a way, which if taken, will surely make her destroy herself. And to this end, they are making ready for their own departure out of the town, intending to betake themselves to the town again, and there to lie, till they shall see whether this their project will take or not. But be thou ready with the men of my Lord, for on the third day they will be in the plain, there to fall upon the Diabolians; for the Prince will, by that time, be in the field; yea, by that it is break of day, sun rising, or before, and that with a mighty force against them. So he shall be before them, and thou shalt be behind them, and betwixt you both, their army shall be destroyed."

When Captain Credence heard this; away goes he to the rest of the Captains, and tells them what a note he had, a while since, received from the hand of Emanuel. And, said he, that which was dark therein, has my Lord, the Lord Secretary, expounded unto me. He told them moreover, what by himself and by them must be done, to answer the mind of their Lord. Then were the Captains glad, and Captain Credence commanded, that all the King's trumpeters should ascend to the battlements of the castle, and there in the audience of Diabolus, and of the whole town of Mansoul, make the best music that heart could invent. The trumpeters then did as they were commanded. They got themselves up

*his Prince  
which he  
understand-  
eth not.*

*The riddle  
expounded  
to Captain  
Credence.*

*The Cap-  
tains are  
glad to  
hear.*



*Curious  
music  
made by  
the trum-  
peters.*

to the top of the castle, and thus they began to sound; then did Diabolus start, and said, What can be the meaning of this, they neither sound Boot and Saddle, nor Horse and away, nor a Charge. What do these mad men mean, and yet they should be so merry and glad? Then answered one of themselves, and said, This is for joy that their Prince Emanuel is coming to relieve the town of Mansoul; that, to this end, he is at the head of an army, and that this relief is near.

The men of Mansoul also were greatly concerned at this melodious charm of the trumpets; they said, yea, they answered one another, saying, this can be no harm to us. Then said the Diabolians, what had we best to do? And it was answered, that it was best to quit the town; and that, said one, you may be in pursuance of your last counsel, and by so doing, be better able to give the enemy battle, should an army from without come up-

*Diabolus  
with traws  
from the  
town, and  
why.*

on us. So on the second day they withdrew themselves from Mansoul, and abode in the plains without, but they encamped themselves before Eye-gate, in what terrene and terrible manner they could. The reason why they would not abide in the town (besides the reasons that they were debated in the conclave) was for that they were not possessed of the strong hold, and because, said they, we shall have more convenience to fight, and also, to fly, if need be, when we are incamped in the open plains. Besides, the town would have been a pit for them, rather than a place of defence, had the Prince come up and inclosed them fast therein. Therefore they betook themselves to the field, that they might also be out of the reach of their slings, by which they were much annoyed, all the while that they were in the town.

*The time  
come for  
the Cap-  
tains to  
fight them.*

Well, the time that the Captains were to fall upon the Diabolians, being come, they eagerly prepared themselves for action; for Captain Credence, had told the Captains over night, that they should meet their Prince in the field to-morrow. This therefore made them yet far more desirous to be engaging the

enemy.

enemy: 'For you shall see the Prince in the field to morrow,' was like oil to flaming fire; for of a long time they had been at a distance; they therefore were for this, the more earnest and desirous of the work. So, as I said, the hour being come, Captain Credence, with the rest of the men of war, drew out their forces before it were day, by the falliport of the town. And *They drew out into the field.* being all ready, Captain Credence went up to the head of the army, and gave to the rest of the Captains the word, and so they to their under officers and soldiers, the word was 'The sword of the Prince Emanuel, and the shield of Captain Credence,' which is in the *The word.* Mansolean tongue, 'The word of God and faith.' Then the Captains fell on, and began roundly to front and flank, and rear Diabolus's camp.

Now they left Captain Experience in the town, because he was yet ill of his wounds, which the Diabolians had given him in the last fight. But when he perceived that the Captains were at it, what does he, but calling for his crutches with haste, gets up, and away he goes to the battle, saying, Shall I lie here, when my brethren are in the fight, and when Emanuel, the Prince, will shew himself in the field to his servants? but when the enemy saw the man come with his crutches, they were daunted yet the more, for thought they, what spirit has possessed these Mansoleans, that they fight me upon their crutches. Well the Captains, as I said, fell on, and did bravely handle their weapons, still crying out and shouting as they laid on blows. 'The sword of the Prince Emanuel, the shield of Captain Credence.'

Now when Diabolus saw that the Captains were come out and that so valiantly *The battle joined.* they surrounded his men, he concluded that (for the present) nothing from them was to be looked for but blows, and the dints of their two edged swords.

Wherefore he falls upon the Prince's army, with all his deadly force. So the battle was joined, Now who it that at first Diabolus met with in the fight, but

*Willbewill  
engaged*

Captain Credence on the one hand, and the Lord Willbewill on the other; now Willbewill's blows were like the blows of a giant, for that man had a strong arm: he fell upon the Election doubters, for they were the life guard of Diabolus, and he kept them in play a good while cutting and battering shrewdly. Now when

*Credence engaged.*

Captain Credence saw my ord engaged, he did stoutly fall on on the other hand, upon the same company also; so they put them to great disorder. Now Captain

*Goodhope engaged.*

Goodhope had engaged the Vocation doubters, and they were sturdy men; but the

Captain was a valiant man. Captain Experince did also send him some aid, so he made the Vocation doubters retreat. The rest of the armies were hotly engaged, and that on every side, and the Diabolians did fight stoutly.

*The Lord  
Secretary engaged.*

Then did my Lord Secretary command that the slings from the castle should be played, and his men could throw stones at an hair's breadth. But after a while, those that were made to fly before the Captains

of the Prince did begin to rally again, and they came up stoutly upon the rear of the Prince's army; wherefore the Prince's army began to faint, but remembring

*The battle  
renewed. A  
fierce fight.*

that they should see the face of their Prince by and by, they took courage, and a very fierce battle was fought. Then shouted the Captains, saying, 'The sword of the Prince Emanuel, and the shield of Captain Cre-

dence;' and with that Diabolus gave back, thinking that more aid had been come. But no Emanuel, as yet, appeared. Moreover, the battle did hang in

*They both retreat.*

doubt; and they made a little retreat on both sides. Now in the time of respite, Captain Credence bravely engaged his men

to stand to it, and Diabolus did the like, as well as he could. But Captain Credence made a brave

*Captain Credence makes a  
speech to his  
soldiers.*

speech to his soldiers, the contents whereof here follow:

"Gentlemen soldiers, and my brethren in this design, it rejoiceth me much to see in the field, for our Prince this day, so stout

and



and so valiant an army, and such faithful lovers of Mansoul. You have hitherto, as hath become you, shewn yourselves men of truth and courage against the Diabolian forces, so that for all their boast, they have not yet cause much to boast of their gettings. Now take to yourselves your wonted courage, and shew yourselves men, even this once only; for in a few matters after the next engagement, this time, you shall see your Prince shew himself in the field; for we must make this second assault upon the tyrant Diabolus, and then Emanuel comes."

No sooner had the Captain made this speech to his soldiers, but one Mr. Speedy came post to the Captain from the Prince, to tell him, that Emanuel was at hand. This news, when the Captain had received, he communicated to the other field officers, and they again to their soldiers and men of war. Wherefore like men raised from the dead, so the Captains and their men arose, made up to the enemy, and cried as before, 'The sword of the Prince Emanuel, and the shield of Captain Credence.'

The Diabolians also bestirred themselves, and made resistance as well as they could; but in this last engagement the Diabolians lost their courage, and many of the Doubters fell down dead to the ground. Now when they had been in heat of battle about an hour or more, Captain Credence lift up his eyes and saw, and behold Emanuel came, and he came with colours flying, trumpets sounding, and the feet of his men scarce touched the ground, they halted to that celerity towards the Captains that were engaged. Then did Captain Credence wind his men to the townward, and gave to Diabolus the field. So Emanuel came upon him on the one side, and the enemies place was betwixt them both; then again they fell to it afresh; and now it was but a little while more, but Emanuel and Captain Credence met still trampling down the slain as they came.

*When the enemy is betwixt Christ and faith, then down they go to be sure.*

But when the Captains saw that the Prince was come, and that he fell on the Diabolians on the other side, and that Captain Credence and his Highness had got them up betwixt them, they shouted, (they so shouted, that the ground rent again) saying, 'The sword of Emanuel, and the shield of Captain Credence. Now when Diabolus

hus saw that he and his forces were so hard beset, by the Prince and his Princely army; what does he and the Lords of the

*The victory falls to Emanuel and to his men who stay all.*

pit that were with him, but make their escape, and forsake their army, and leave them to fall by the hand of Emanuel, and of his noble Captain Credence; so they fell all down slain before them, before the Prince, and before his royal army; there was not left so much as one Doubter alive, they lay spread upon the ground dead men, as one would spread dung upon the land.

When the battle was over, all-things came into order in the camp; then the Captains and Elders of Mansoul

*Mansoul salutes the Prince without, he addresses himself to go into the town.*

came together to salute Emanuel, while without the corporation; so they saluted him, and welcomed him, and that with a thousand welcomes, for that he was come to the borders of Mansoul again; so he smiled upon them, and said, 'Peace be to you.' Then they addressed themselves to go to the town; they went then to go up to Mansoul, they, the Prince, with all the new forces that now he had brought with him to the war. Also, all the gates of the town were set open for his reception, so glad were they of his blessed return. And this was the manner and order of this going of his into Mansoul.

*The manner of his going in.*

First, (as I said) all the gates of the town were set open, yea, the gates of the castle also; the elders too, of the town of

Mansoul, placed themselves at the gates of the town, to salute him at his entrance thither: and so they did, for as he drew near, and approached towards the gates, they said. "Lift up your heads, O ye gates, and be ye lifted up ye everlasting doors, and the King of glory shall come in." And they answered again, "Who is the King of glory?" And they made a return to themselves, "The Lord strong and mighty, the Lord mighty in battle. Lift up your heads, O ye gates, even lift them up ye everlasting doors, &c."

Secondly. It was ordered also, by those of Mansoul, that all the way from the town gates to those of the castle his blessed majesty should be entertained with a song, by them

them  
soul;  
Mansoul  
town,  
found  
O-G  
tuary  
strum  
sels p  
Th  
of th  
entre  
went  
Chas  
Capt  
Capt  
acco  
the  
cont  
Prin  
of b  
silve  
of P  
the  
F  
of M  
with  
bou  
tha  
doo  
ry  
of v  
al,  
Em  
cla  
con  
I  
wit  
din  
the  
gai  
tee  
for

them that had best skill in music, in the town of Mansoul; then did the elders and the rest of the town of Mansoul, answer one another as Emanuel entered the town, till he came at the castle gates, with songs and sound of trumpet, saying, "They have seen thy goings, O-God, even the going of my God, my King in the sanctuary. So the singers went before? the players, with instruments followed after, and among them were the damsels playing on timbrels."

Thirdly, Then the Captains, (for I would speak a word of them) they, in their order, waited on the Prince, as he entered into the gates of Mansoul. Captain Credence went before, and Captain Goodhope with him; Captain Charity came behind, with other of his companions, and Captain Patience followed after all, and the rest of the Captains, some on the right hand, and some on the left, accompanied Emanuel into Mansoul. And all the while the colours were displayed, the trumpets sounded, and continual shoutings were among the soldiers. "The Prince rode into the town in his armour, which was all of beaten gold: and in his chariot the pillars of it were silver, the bottom thereof of gold, the covering of it were of purple; the midst thereof, being paved with love for the daughters of the town of Mansoul."

Fourthly, When the Prince was come to the entrance of Mansoul, he found all the streets strewed with lilies and flowers, curiously decked with *Good an'joy-* boughs and branches from the green trees, *ful thoughts.* that stood round about the town. Every door also was filled with persons, who had adorned every one their forepart against their house with something of variety, and singular excellency to entertain him withal, as he passed in the streets; they also themselves, as Emanuel passed by, did welcome him with shouts and acclamations of joy, saying, 'Blessed be the Prince that cometh in the name of his father Shaddai.

Fifthly, At the castle gates the Elders of Mansoul, to wit, my Lord Mayor, the Lord Willbewill, the Subordinate preacher, Mr. Knowledge, and Mr. Mind, with the other of the gentry of the place, saluted Emanuel again; they bowed before him, they kissed the dust of his feet, they thanked, they blessed and praised his Highness, for not taking advantage against them for their sins, but rather



rather had pity upon them in their misery, and returned to them with mercies, and to build up their Mansoul forever. Thus he was had up straightway to the castle; for that was the royal place, and the place where his honour was to dwell; the which was ready prepared for his Highness, by the presence of the Lord Secretary, and the work of Captain Credence. So he entered in.

Sixthly, then the people, and commonality of the town of Mansoul, came to him into the castle, to mourn and to weep, and to lament for their wickedness, by which they had forced him out of the town. So they, when they were come, bowed themselves to the ground seven times; they also wept, they wept aloud, and asked forgiveness of the Prince, and prayed, that he would again, as of old, confirm his love to Mansoul.

To the which, the great Prince replied, "Weep not, but go your way, eat the fat, and drink the sweet, and send portions to them for whom naught is prepared, for the joy of your Lord is your strength. I am returned to Mansoul with mercies, and my name shall be set up, exalted and magnified by it." He also took these inhabitants and kissed them, and laid them in his bosom.

*The holy con-  
ceptions of  
Mansoul.  
Young and  
tender  
thoughts.*

Moreover, he gave to the Elders of Mansoul, and to each town officer, a chain of gold and a signet. He also sent to their wives, ear-rings and jewels, and bracelets and other things. He also bestowed upon the true-born child of Mansoul many precious things.

When Emanuel the Prince had done all these things for the famous town of Mansoul, then he said unto them, first, 'Wash your garments, then put on your ornaments, and then come to me in the castle of Mansoul.' So they went to the fountain, that was set open for Judas and Jerusalem to wash in; and there they washed, and there they made their garments white, and they came again to the Prince into the castle, and thus they stood before him.

And now there was music and dancing throughout the whole town of Mansoul, and that because their Prince had again granted to them his presence, and light of his countenance; the bells also did ring, and the sun shine comfortably upon them for a great while together.

The

The town of Mansoul did also now more thoroughly seek the destruction and ruin of all remaining Diabolians that abode in the walls and the dens, that they had in the town of Mansoul; for there was of them that had, to this day, escaped with life and limb from the hand of their suppressors in the famous town of Mansoul.

But my Lord Willbewill was a greater terror to them now than ever he had been before; forasmuch as his heart was yet more fully bent to seek, contrive, and pursue them to the death; he pursued them night and day, and did put them now to sore distress, as will afterwards appear.

After things were thus far put into order, in the famous town of Mansoul, care was taken, and order given by the blessed Prince Emanuel, that the townsmen should, without further delay, appoint some to go forth into the plain, to bury the dead that were there: the dead that fell by the sword of Emanuel, and by the shield of the Captain Credence, lest the fumes and favours that would arise from them, might infect the air, and so annoy the famous town of Mansoul. This also was a reason of this order, viz. that as much as in Mansoul lay, they might cut off the name and being, and remembrance of those enemies, from the thought of the famous town of Mansoul, and its inhabitants.

So order was given out by the Lord Mayor, that wise and trusty friend of the town of Mansoul, that persons should be employed about this necessary business; and Mr. Godlyfear, and one Mr. Upright were to be overseers about this matter; for persons were put under them to work in the fields, and to bury the slain that lay dead in the plains. And these were their places of employment, some were to make the graves, some to bury the dead, and some were to go to and fro in the plains, and also round about the borders of Mansoul, to see if a skull, or a bone, or a piece of a bone of a Doubter, was yet to be found above ground, any where near the corporation; and if any were found, it was ordered, that the searchers that searched should set up a mark thereby, and a sign, that those that were appointed to bury them might find it, and bury it out of sight, that the name and remembrance of

a Dia-

*Not a skull  
or a bone,  
or a piece  
of a bone of  
a Doubter  
to be left  
unburied.*

a Diabolian Doubter might be blotted out from under heaven. And that the children, and they that were to be born in Mansoul, might not know, if possible, what a skull, what a bone, or a piece of a bone of a Doubter was. So the buriers, and these that were appointed for that purpose, did as they were commanded; they buried the Doubters, and all the skulls and bones, and pieces of bones of Doubters, wherever they found them, and so they cleansed the plains. Now also Mr. Godspeace took up his commission, and acted again as in former days.

Thus they buried in the plains about Mansoul, the Election Doubters, the Vocation Doubters, the Grace Doubters, the Perseverance Doubters, the Resurrection Doubters, the Salvation Doubters, and the Glory Doubters, whose Captains were Captain Rage, Cruel, Damnation, Insatiable, Brimstone, Torment, Noease, Sepulcher, and Pasthope; and Old Incredulity was under Diabolus their General; they were also the seven heads of the army, and they were the Lord Beelzebub, the Lord Lucifer, the Lord Legion, the Lord Appollyon, the Lord Python, the Lord Cerberus, and the Lord Beliel. But the Princes and Captains, with old Incredulity their General, did all of them make their escape; so their men fell down slain by the power of the Prince's forces, and by the hands of the men of the town of Mansoul. They also were buried as it is afore related, to the exceeding great joy of Mansoul. They that buried them, buried also with them their arms, which were cruel instruments of death; their weapons were arrows, darts, mauls, firebrands, and the like; they buried also their armour, their colours, banners, with the standard of Diabolus, and what else soever they could find that did but smell of a Diabolian Doubter.

Now when the tyrant was arrived at Hellgate hill, with his old friend Incredulity, they immediately descended the den, and having there, with their fellows, for a while, condoled their misfortune, and great loss that they sustained against the town of Mansoul, they fell at length into a passion, and revenged they would be for the loss that they



they sustained before the town of Mansoul; wherefore they presently call a council to contrive yet further what was to be done against the famous town of Mansoul, for their yawning patinches could not wait to see the result of their Lord Lucifer's, and their Lord Apollyon's counsel that they had given before, for their raging gorge thought every day even as long as short for ever, until they were filled with the body and soul, with the flesh and bones, and with all the delicacies of Mansoul. They therefore resolve to make another attempt and that by an army mixed, and made up partly of Doubters and partly of Bloodmen. A more particular account now take of both.

The Doubters are such as have their name from their nature, as well as from the Lord and Kingdom where they are born; their nature is to put a question upon every one of the truths of Emanuel, and their country is called the Land of Doubting, and that land lyeth off, and furthest remote to the north, between the land of Darkness, and that called The Valley of the Shaddow of Death. For though the Land of Darkness, and that called the Land of the Shaddow of Death, be sometimes called as if they were one and the self same place, yet indeed they are two, lying but a little way asunder, and the land of Doubting points in, and lying between them. This is the land of Doubting, and those that came with Diabolus to ruin the town of Mansoul, are the natives of that country.

*The tyrant resolves to have yet about with Mansoul.*

*An army of Doubters and Bloodmen.*

*Of the country of the Doubters and Bloodmen where they lie.*

The Bloodmen are people that have their name derived from the malignity of their nature, and from the fury that is in them to execute it upon the town of Mansoul; their land lyeth under the dog-star, and by that they are governed as to their intellectuals. The name of their country is the province of Loathgood, the remote parts of it are far distant from the Land of Doubting, yet they do both butt and bound upon the hill called Hell gate hill. These people are always in league with the Doubters, for they jointly do make question of the faith and fidelity of

the men of the town of Mansoul, and so are both alike qualified for the service of their Prince.

Now of these two countries did Diabolus by the beating of his drum, raise another army against the town of Mansoul, of five and twenty thousand strong. There were ten thousand Doubters, and fifteen thousand Bloodmen, and they were put under several Captains of the war, and old Incredulity was again made General of the army.

As for the Doubters, their Captains were five of the seven that were heads of the last Diabolian army, and these are their names, Beelzebub, Lucifer, Appollyon, Legion, Cerberus, and the Captains that they had before were some of them made Lieutenants, and some Ensigns of the army.

But Diabolus did not count that in this expedition of his, these Doubters would prove his principal men, for their manhood had been tried before; also the Mansoul-ians had put them to the worst, only he did bring them to multiply a number, and to help if need was at a pinch, but his trust he put in his Bloodmen, for they were all rugged villains and he knew that they had done feats heretofore.

*His chief strength lies in the Bloodmen.*

As for the bloodmen they also were under command the names of their Captains were Cain, Nimrod, Ishmael, Esau, Saul, Absalom, Judas, Pope.

1. Cain was Captain over two bands, to wit, the zealous and the angry Bloodmen; his standard bearer bare the red colours, and his scutcheon was the Murdering Club.

2. Nimrod was Captain over two bands, to wit, the tyrannical and incroaching Bloodmen; his standard bearer bare the red colours, and his scutcheon was the great Blood-hound.

3. Ishmael was Captain over two bands, to wit, over the mocking and scorning Bloodmen; his standard bearer bare the red colours, and his scutcheon was one Mocking at Abraham's Isaac.

4. Esau was Captain over two bands, to wit, the Bloodmen that grudged that another should have the blessing; also over the Bloodmen that are for executing their private revenge upon others; his standard bearer bare the red

red colours, and his scutcheon was one privately lurking to murder Jacob.

5. Saul was Captain over two bands, to wit, the groundlessly Jealous, and the devilishly furious Bloodmen; his standard bearer bare the red colours, and his scutcheon was three Bloody Darts cast at harmless David.

6. Absalom was Captain over the two bands, to wit, over the Bloodmen that will kill a father or a friend for the glory of this world; also over those Bloodmen that will hold one fair in hand with words, till they shall have pierced him with their swords; his standard bearer did bear the red colours, and his scutcheon was the son pursuing the father's blood.

7. Judas was Captain over the two bands, to wit, over the Bloodmen that will sell a man's life for money, and those also that will betray their friends with a kiss; his standard bearer bare the red colours, and his scutcheon was thirty pieces of Silver and the Halter.

8. Pope was Captain over one band, for all these spirits are joined in one under him; his standard bearer bare the red colours, and his scutcheon was the Stake, the Flame, and the good Man in it.

Now the reason why Diabolus did so soon rally another force after he had been beaten out of the field, was, for that he put mighty confidence in his army of Bloodmen, for he put a great deal of more trust in them, than he did before in his army of Doubters, though they had also often done great service for him, in the strengthening of him in his kingdom. But these Bloodmen he had proved them often, and their sword did seldom return empty. Besides, he knew that these, like mastiffs, would fasten upon any; upon father, mother, brother, sister, prince or governor, yea, upon the Prince of Princes. And that which encouraged him the more was, for that they did once force Emanuel out of the kingdom of Universe, and why, thought he, may they not also drive him from the town of Mansoul.

So this army of five and twenty thousand strong was, by their General the great Lord Incredulity, led up against the town of Mansoul. Now Mr. Prywell, the scout

*They sit  
down before  
Mansoul.*

master general, did himself go out to spy, and he did bring Mansoul tidings of their coming; where-



fore they shut up their gates, and put themselves in a posture of defence against these new Diabolians that came up against the town.

*How they dis-  
pose of them-  
selves.*

So Diabolus brought up his army, and beleagured the town of Mansoul; the Doubters were placed about Feetgate, and the Bloodmen sat down before Eyegate and Eargate.

Now when this army had thus encamped themselves, Incredulity did, in the name of Diabolus, his own name, and in the name of the Bloodmen, and the rest that were with him, send a summons as hot as a red hot iron to Mansoul, to yield to their demands, threatening that if they still stood it out against them, they would presently burn down Mansoul with fire, For you must know, that as for the Bloodmen they were not so much that Mansoul should be surrendered, as that Mansoul should be destroyed, and cut off out of the land of the living. True, they send to them to surrender, but should they so do, that would not so stench or quench the thirsts of these men; they must have blood, the blood of Mansoul, else they die, and it is from hence that they have their name; wherefore these Bloodmen he reserved, while now that they might when all his engines proved ineffectual, as his last and sure card, he played against the town of Mansoul.

Now when the townsmen had received this red hot summons, it began in them at present some changing and interchanging thoughts; but they jointly agreed, in less than half an hour, to carry the summons to the Prince, the which they did, when they had writ at the bottom of it, Lord save Mansoul from bloody men.

So he took it, and looked upon it, and considered it, and took notice of that short petition that the men of Mansoul had written at the bottom of it, and called to him the noble Captain Credence, and bid him go and take Captain Patience with him, and go and take care of that side of Mansoul that was beleagured by the Bloodmen. So they went and did as they were commanded; then Captain Credence went and took Captain Patience, and secured that side of Mansoul that was besieged by the Bloodmen.

Then he commanded that Captain Goodhope and Cap-

tain

tain Charity, and my Lord Willbewill should take charge of the other side of the town; and I, said the Prince, will set my standard upon the battlements of your castle, and do you three watch against the Doubters. This done, he again commanded, that the brave Captain, and Captain Experience, should draw up his men in the market-place, and that there he should exercise them day by day before the people of the town of Mansoul. Now this siege was long, and many a fierce attempt did the enemy, especially those who are called the Bloodmen, make upon the town of Mansoul; and many a shrewd brush did some of the townsmen meet with from them, especially Captain Selfdenial, who, I should have told you before, was commanded to take the care of Eargate and Eyegate now against the Bloodmen. This Captain Selfdenial was a young man but stout, and a townsmen in Mansoul, as Captain Experience also was. And Emanuel, at his second return to Mansoul, made him a Captain over a thousand of the Mansouliaus, for the good of the corporation. This Captain therefore being an hardy man, and a man of great courage, and willing to venture himself for the good of the town of Mansoul, would now and then sally out upon the Bloodmen, and give them many notable alarms, and entered several brisk skirmishes with them, and also did some execution upon them, though which he carried several of their marks in his face, and on his body.

So after some time spent for the trial of the faith and hope and love of the town of Mansoul; the Prince Emanuel, upon a day, calls his Captains and men of war together, and divides them into two companies; this done, he commands them at a time appointed, and that in the morning very early, to sally out upon the enemy, saying, let half of you fall upon the Doubters, and half of you fall upon the Bloodmen. Those of you that go out against the Doubters, kill and slay, and cause to perish so many of them, as by any means you can lay hands on; but for you that go out against the Bloodmen, slay them not but take them alive.

So at the time appointed, betimes in the morning, the

*Emanuel prepares to give the enemy battle.*

*The Captains go out.*

Captains went out as they were commanded against the enemies : Captain Goodhope, Captain Charity, and those that were joined with them, as Captain Innocent and Captain Experience, went out against the Doubters : and Captain Credence and Captain Patience, with Captain Selfdenial, and the rest that were to join with them, went out against the Bloodmen.

Now these that went out against the Doubters, drew up into a body before the plain, and marched

*The Doubters put to flight.*

on to bid them battle ; But the Doubters remembring their last success, made a retreat, nor daring to stand the shock, but fled from the Prince's men ; wherefore they pursued them, and in their pursuit slew many, but they could not catch them all. Now these that escaped, went some of them home, and the rest by fives, nines and seventeens, like wanderers, went stragling up and down the country, where they, upon the barbarous people, shewed and exercised many of their Diabolian actions ; nor did these people rise up in arms against them, but suffered themselves to be enslaved by them. They would also, after this, shew themselves in companies before the town of Mansoul, but never to abide it : for if Captain Credence, Captain Goodhope, or Captain Experience did shew themselves, they fled.

*The Bloodmen are taken and how.*

Those that went out against the Bloodmen, did as they were commanded, they forbore to slay any, but sought to compass them about. But the Bloodmen, when they saw that no Emanuel was in the field, concluded also, that no Emanuel was in Mansoul ; wherefore they looking upon what the Captain did, to be, as they called it, a fruit of the extravagancy of their wild and foolish fancies, rather despised them than feared them, but the Captains minding their business, at last did compass them round ; they also that had routed the Doubters came to amain to their aid, so, in fine, after some little struggling, for the Bloodmen also would have run for it, only now it was too late, for though they were mischievous and cruel, where they can overcome, yet all Bloodmen are chicken-hearted men, when they once come to see them.



themselves match'd and equal'd, so the Captains took them and brought them to the Prince.

Now when they were taken, had before the Prince, and examined, he found them to be of three several counties, though they all came out of one land.

*They are brought to the Prince and found to be of three sorts.*

1. One sort of them came out of Blindmanshire, and they were such as did ignorantly what they did.

2. Another sort of them came out of Blindzealshire, and they did superstitiously what they did.

3. The third sort of them came out of the town of Malice, in the county of Envy, and they did what they did out of spite and implacableness.

For the first of these, to wit, they that came out of Blindmanshire, when they saw where they were, and against whom they had fought, they trembled, and cried as they stood before him; and as many of these as asked him mercy, he touched his lips with his golden scepter.

They that came out of Blindzealshire, they did not as their fellows did, for they pleaded that they had right to do what they did, because Mansoul was a town, whose laws and customs were diverse from all that dwelt thereabouts; very few of these could be brought to see their evil, but those that did, and asked mercy, they also obtained favour.

Now they that came out of the town of Malice, that is in the county of Envy, they neither wept, nor disputed, nor repented, but stood gnawing of their tongues before him for anguish and madness, because they could not have their will upon Mansoul. Now those last, with all those of the other two sorts, that did not unfeignedly ask pardon for their faults; those he made to enter into sufficient bond to answer for what they had done against Mansoul and against her King, at the great and general assizes to be holden for our Lord the King, where he himself should appoint for the country and kingdom of Universe.

So they became bound each man for himself to come in, when called upon, to answer before our Lord the King for what they had done as before.

And

And thus much concerned this second army, that were sent by Diabolus to overthrow Mansoul.\*

But there were three of those that came from the land of Doubting, who after they had wandered and ranged the country a while, and perceived that they had escaped, were so hardy, as to thrust themselves, knowing that yet they were in the town Diabolians, I say they were so hardy as to thrust themselves into Mansoul among them; three, did I say, I think there were four. Now to whose house should the Diabolian Doubters go, but to the house of an old Diabolian in Mansoul, whose name was Evilquestioning, a very great enemy he was to Mansoul, and a great doer among the Diabolians there. Well, to this Evilquestioning's house, as we said, did these Diabolians come, (you may be sure that they had directions how to find the way thither) so he made them welcome, pitied their misfortune, and succoured them with the best that he had in his house. Now after a little acquaintance,

*What sort of  
Doubters  
they are.*

and it was not long before they had that, this old Evilquestioning asked the Doubters if they were all of a town, (he knew that they were all of one kingdom) and they answered No, nor of one shire neither; for

I, said one am an Election Doubter; I, said another, am a Vocation Doubter; then said the third, I am a Salvation Doubter; and the fourth said, he was a Grace Doubter. Well, quoth the old Gentleman, be of what shire you will, I am persuaded that you are down boys, you have the very length of my foot, are one with my heart, and shall be welcome to me. So they thanked him, and were glad that they had found themselves an harbour in Mansoul. Then said Evilquestioning to them, How many of your company might there be that came with you to the siege of Mansoul? And they answered, there but ten thousand Doubters in all, for the rest of the army consisted of fifteen thousand Bloodmen; these Bloodmen, quoth they, border upon our country, but poor men, as we hear, they were every one taken by Emanuel's forces. Ten thousand! quoth the old gentleman, I'll promise you that's a round company; but how came it to pass, since you were so mighty a number, that you fainted, and durst not fight your foes! Our General, said they, was the first man that did run for't. Pray quoth

quoth their landlord, who was that your cowardly General? He was once the Lord Mayor of Mansoul, said they: But pray call him not a cowardly General, for whether any from the east to the west has done more service for our Prince Diabolus, than has my Lord Incrudulity, will be a hard question for you to answer; but had they catched him, they would for certain have hang'd him, and we promise you, hanging is but a bad business. Then said the old gentleman, I would that all the ten thousand Doubters were now well armed in Mansoul, and myself at the head of them, I would see what I could do. Ay, say they, that would be well if we could see that; but wilhes, alas! what are they! And these words were spoken aloud. Well, said old Evilquestioning, take heed that you talk not too loud, you must be quiet and close, and must take care of yourselves while you are here, or I'll assure you will be snapt.

Why? quoth the Doubters.

Why, quoth the old gentleman, because both the Prince and Lord Secretary, and their Captains and soldiers are all at present in town; yea, the town is as full of them as ever it can hold. And besides, there is one whose name is Willbewill, a most cruel enemy of ours, and him the Prince has made keeper of the gates, and has commanded him that, with all the diligence he can, he should look for, search out, and destroy all, and all manner of Diabolians.

And if he lighteth upon you, down you go, though your heads were made of gold. *They are overheard.*

And now to see how it happened, one of the Lord Willibewill's faithful soldiers, whose name was Mr. Diligence, stood all this while listening under old Evilquestioning's caves, and heard all the talk which had been betwixt him and the Doubters that he entertained under his roof.

The soldier was a man that my Lord had much confidence in, and that he loved dearly, and that both because he was a man of courage, and also a man that was unwearied in seeking after Diabolians to apprehend them.

Now



Now this man, as I told you, heard all the talk that was between old Evilquestioning and these Diabolians; wherefore what does he but goes to his Lord, and tells him what he had heard. and sayest thou so, my trusty, quoth my Lord? Ay, quoth Diligence, that I do, and if your Lordship shall be pleased to go with me, you shall find it as I have said. And are they there, quoth my Lord; I know Evilquestioning well, for he and I were great in the time of our apostacy; but I know not now where he dwells. But I do, said his man, and if your Lordship will go, I will lead you the way to his den. Go! quoth my Lord, that I will. Come, my Diligence, let's go find them out. So my Lord and his men went together the direct way to his house. Now his men went before to shew him his way, and they went till they came even under old Mr. Evilquestioning's wall: Then said Diligence, Hark! my Lord, do you know the old gentleman's tongue when you hear it? Yes said my Lord, I know it well, but I have not seen him many a day. This I know, he is cunning, I wish he doth not give us the slip. Let me alone for that, said his servant Diligence. But how shall we find the door, quoth my Lord? Let me alone for that too, said his man. So he had my Lord Willbewill about, and shewed him the way to the door. Then my Lord, without more ado, broke open the door, rushed into the house and caught them all five together, even as Diligence his man had told him. So my Lord apprehended them, and lead them away, and committed them into the hand of Mr. Trueman the Jaylor, and commanded, that he did put them in ward. This done, my Lord Mayor was acquainted in the morning with what my Lord Willbewill had done over night, and his Lordship rejoiced much at the news, not only because there were Doubters apprehended, but because that old Evilquestioning was taken; for he had been a very great trouble to Mansoul, and much affliction to my Lord Mayor himself. He had also been sought for often, but no hand could ever be laid upon him till now.

Well, the next thing was to make preparation to try these five, that by my Lord, had been appointed, and that were in the hands of Mr. Trueman the Jaylor. So

the

the day was set, and the court called and came together, and the prisoners brought to the bar. My Lord Willbewill had power to have slain them when at first he took them, and that without any more ado. But he thought it at this time more for the honour of the Prince, the comfort of Mansoul, and the discouragement of the enemy, to bring them forth to public judgment.

*They are brought to tryal.*

But I say, Mr. Trueman brought them in chains to the bar, to the town-hall, for that was the place of judgment. So to be short, the jury was pannelled, the witnesses sworn, and the prisoners tried for their lives; the jury was the same that tried Mr. Notruth, Pitiless, Haughty, and the rest of their companions.

And first, old Questioning himself was set to the bar; for he was the receiver, the entertainer, and comforter of these Doubters, that by nation was outlandish men; then he was bid to hearken to his charge, and was told that he had liberty to object, if he had ought to say for himself. So this indictment was read, the manner and form here follows.

“Mr. Questioning, thou art here indicted by the name of Evilquestioning, an intruder upon the town of Mansoul, for that thou art a Diabolian by nature, and also a hater of the Prince Emanuel, and one that studied the ruin of the town of Mansoul. Thou art also here indicted for countenancing the King's enemies, after wholesome laws made to the doctrine and state. 2. In wishing that ten thousand Doubters were in her. 3. In receiving, in entertaining, and encouraging of her enemies, that came from their army unto thee. What sayest thou to this indictment, art thou guilty or not guilty?”

*His indictment.*

“My Lord, (quoth he) I know not the meaning of this indictment, for as much as I am not the man concerned in it, the man that standeth by this charge, accused before this bench, is called by the name of Evilquestioning, which name I deny to be mine, mine being Honestenquiring. The one indeed sounds very like the other, but I trow, your Lordships know, that between those two there is a wide difference; for I hope that a man, even in the worst of times

*His plea.*

times, and that too amongst the worst of men, may make an honest enquiry after things, without running the danger of death."

Then spake my Lord Willbewill, for he was one of the witnesses: "My Lord, and you the honourable bench, and magistrates of the town of Mansoul, you all have heard with your ears, that the prisoner at the bar has denied his name, and so thinks to shift from the charge of the indictment. But I know him to be the man concerned and that his proper name is Evilquestioning. I have known him, my Lord, above this thirty years, for he and I (a shame it is for me to speak it) were great acquaintance, when Diabolus, that tyrant, had the government of Mansoul; and I testify that he is a Diabolian by nature, an enemy of our Prince, and an hater of the blessed town of Mansoul. He has, in times of rebellion, been and lain at my house, my Lord, and so little as twenty nights together, and we did use to talk then, for the substance of talk, as he and his doubters have talked of late: True, I have not seen him many a day. I suppose that the coming of Emanuel to Mansoul, has made him to change his lodgings, as this indictment has driven him to change his name, but this is the man, my Lord.

*The court.* Then said the court unto him, hast thou any thing to say?

*His plea.* Yes, quoth the old gentleman, that I have, for all that as yet has been said against me, is but by the mouth of one witness, and it is not lawful for the famous town of Mansoul, at the mouth of one witness to put any man to death.

*Mr. Diligence's testimony.* Then stood forth Mr. Diligence and said, 'My Lord, as I was upon my watch such a night at the head of Badstreet, in this town, I chanced to hear a muttering within this gentleman's house; then, thought I, what's to do here? so I went up close, but very softly, to the side of the house to listen, thinking, as indeed it fell out, that there I might light upon some Diabolian conventicle. So, as I said, I drew nearer and nearer, and when I was got up close to the wall, it was but a while before I perceived that there were outlandish men in the house, (but I did well under-

stand



stand their speech, for I have been a traveller myself) now hearing such language, in such a tottering cottage as this old gentleman dwelt in, I clapt mine ear to a hole in the window, and there heard them talk as followeth. This old Mr. Questioning asked these Doubters what they were, whence they came, and what was their business in these parts? they told him to all these questions, yet he did entertain them. He also asked what numbers there were of them, and they told him ten thousand men. He then asked them why they made no more manly assaults upon Mansoul? and they told him; so he called their General a coward for his marching off, when he should have fought for his prince. Further, this old Evilquestioning wisht, and I heard him wish, Would all the ten thousand Doubters were now in Mansoul, and himself at the head of them. He bid them also take heed and lie quiet, for if they were taken they must die, although they had heads of gold.

Then said the court, Mr. Evilquestioning, here is now another witness against you, and *The court.* his testimony is full: 1. He swears, that you did receive these men into your house, and that you did nourish them there, though you knew that they were Diabolians, and the King's enemies. 2. He swears, that you did wish ten thousand of them in Mansoul. 3. He swears, that you did give them advice to be quiet and close, lest they were taken by the King's servants. All which manifesteth that thou art a Diabolian; but hadst thou been a friend to the King, thou wouldst have apprehended them.

Then said Evilquestioning, 'To the first *His plea.* of these I answer, the men that came into my house were strangers, and I took them in, and is it now become a crime in Mansoul, for a man to entertain strangers? That I did also nourish them is true, and why should my charity be blamed. As for the reason why I wished ten thousand of them in Mansoul, I never told it to the witnesses nor to themselves. I might wish them to be taken, and so my wish might mean well to Mansoul for aught that any yet knows. I did not bid them take heed that they fell not into the Captains hands, but that might be, because I am unwilling that any man should be slain,

slain, and not because I would have the King's enemies escape.'

My Lord Mayor then replied, That though it was virtue to entertain strangers, yet it was reason to entertain the King's enemies. And for what else thou hast said, thou do'st by words but labour to evade and defer the execution of judgment. But could there be more proved against thee, but thou art a Diabolian, thou must for that die the death by the law; but to be a deceiver, a nourisher, a countenancer, and a harbourer of others of them, yea, of outlandish Diabolians; yea, of them that came from afar, on purpose to cut off and destroy our Mansoul; this must not be born.

Then said Evilquestioning, 'I see how the game will go. I must die for my name, and for my charity.' And so he then held his peace.

Then they called the outlandish Doubter to the bar, and the first of them that was arraigned, was the Election Doubter; so his indictment was read, and because he was an outlandish man, the substance of it was told him by an interpreter to wit, 'That he was there charged with being an enemy to Emanuel the Prince, a hater of the town of Mansoul, and an opposer of her most wholesome doctrine.'

Then the judge asked him if he would plead? But he said only this, That he confessed that he was an Election Doubter, and that was the religion that he had ever been brought up in. And said moreover, if I must die for my religion, I trow, I shall die a martyr, and so I care the less.

Then it was replied, to question Election is to overthrow a great doctrine of the gospel; to wit, the omniscency, and power and will of God, to take away the liberty of God with his creature, to stumble the faith of the town of Mansoul, and to make salvation to depend upon works and not upon grace. It also belied the world, and disquieted the minds of the men of Mansoul; therefore, by the best of laws, he must die.

Then was the Vocation Doubter called, and set to the bar; and his indictment, for

*The Voca-*

sub,

substance; was the same with the other, only, *tion Doubt-*  
 he was particularly charged with denying *er tried.*  
 the calling of Mansoul.

The judge asked him also, what he had to say for himself?

So he replied, "That he never believed that there was any such thing, as a distinct and powerful call of God to Mansoul, otherwise than by the general voice of the word; nor by that neither; otherwise than as it exhorted them to forbear evil, and to do that which is good, and in so doing, a promise of happiness is annexed."

Then said the Judge, Thou art a Diabolian, and has denied a great part of one of the most experimental truths of the Prince of the town of Mansoul; for he has called, and she has heard a most distinct and powerful call of her Emanuel, by which she has been quickened, awakened, and possessed with heavenly grace, to desire to have communion with her Prince, to serve him, and to do his will, and to look for her happiness, merely of his good pleasure. And for rhine abhorrence of his good doctrine, thou must die the death.

Then the Grace Doubter was called, and his indictment was read, and he replied there- *The Grace*  
 to, "That though he was of the land of *Doubter*  
 Doubting; his father was the offspring of a *tried.*  
 Pharisee, and lived in good fashion among  
 his neighbours, and that he taught them to believe, and believe it I do, and will, that Mansoul shall never be saved freely by grace."

Then said the Judge, Why, the law of the Prince is plain: 1. Negatively, 'Not of works:' Rom. 3. 2. Positively, 'By grace you are saved.' Eph. 2. And thy religion setteth in and upon the works of the flesh; for the works of the law are the works of the flesh. Besides, in saying (as thou hast done) thou hast robbed God of his glory, and given it to a sinful man; thou hast robbed Christ of the necessity of his undertaking, and sufficiency thereof, and has given both these to the works of the flesh. Thou hast despised the work of the Holy Ghost, and hast magnified the will of the flesh, and of the legal mind. Thou art a Diabolian; the son of a Diabolian; and for thy Diabolian principles thou must die.



slain, and not because I would have the King's enemies escape.'

My Lord Mayor then replied, That though it was a virtue to entertain strangers, yet it was reason to entertain the King's enemies. And for what else thou hast said, thou do'st by words but labour to evade and defer the execution of judgment. But could there be more proved against thee, but thou art a Diabolian, thou must for that die the death by the law; but to be a deceiver, a nourisher, a countenancer, and a harbourer of others of them, yea, of outlandish Diabolians; yea, of them that came from afar, on purpose to cut off and destroy our Mansoul; this must not be born.

Then said Evilquestioning, 'I see how the game will go. I must die for my name, and for my charity.' And so he then held his peace.

Then they called the outlandish Doubter to the bar, and the first of them that was arraigned, was the Election Doubter; so his indictment was read, and because he was an outlandish man, the substance of it was told him by an interpreter: to wit, 'That he was there charged with being an enemy to Emanuel the Prince, a hater of the town of Mansoul, and an opposer of her most wholesome doctrine.'

Then the judge asked him if he would plead? But he said only this, That he confessed that he was an Election Doubter, and that was the religion that he had ever been brought up in. And said moreover, if I must die for my religion, I trow, I shall die a martyr, and so I care the less.

Then it was replied, to question Election is to overthrow a great doctrine of the gospel; to wit, the omniscency, and power and will of God, to take away the liberty of God with his creature, to stumble the faith of the town of Mansoul, and to make salvation to depend upon works and not upon grace. It also belied the world, and disquieted the minds of the men of Mansoul; therefore, by the best of laws, he must die.

Then was the Vocation Doubter called, and set to the bar; and his indictment, for

substance; was the same with the other, only, *tion Doubt-* he was particularly charged with denying *er tried.* the calling of Mansoul.

The judge asked him also, what he had to say for himself?

So he replied, "That he never believed that there was any such thing, as a distinct and powerful call of God to Mansoul, otherwise than by the general voice of the word; nor by that neither; otherwise than as it exhorted them to forbear evil, and to do that which is good, and in so doing, a promise of happiness is annexed."

Then said the Judge, Thou art a Diabolian, and has denied a great part of one of the most experimental truths of the Prince of the town of Mansoul; for he has called, and she has heard a most distinct and powerful call of her Emanuel, by which she has been quickened, awakened, and possessed with heavenly grace, to desire to have communion with her Prince, to serve him, and to do his will, and to look for her happiness, merely of his good pleasure. And for thine abhorrence of his good doctrine, thou must die the death.

Then the Grace Doubter was called, and his indictment was read, and he replied there- *The Grace Doubter tried.* to, "That though he was of the land of Doubting; his father was the offspring of a Pharisee, and lived in good fashion among his neighbours, and that he taught them to believe, and believe it I do, and will, that Mansoul shall never be saved freely by grace."

Then said the Judge, Why, the law of the Prince is plain: 1. Negatively, 'Not of works;' Rom. 3. 2. Positively, 'By grace you are saved,' Eph. 2. And thy religion setteth in and upon the works of the flesh; for the works of the law are the works of the flesh. Besides, in saying (as thou hast done) thou hast robbed God of his glory, and given it to a sinful man; thou hast robbed Christ of the necessity of his undertaking, and sufficiency thereof, and has given both these to the works of the flesh. Thou hast despised the work of the Holy Ghost, and hast magnified the will of the flesh, and of the legal mind. Thou art a Diabolian; the son of a Diabolian; and for thy Diabolian principles thou must die.

The court then having proceeded thus far with them, sent out the Jury, who forthwith brought them in guilty of death. Then stood up the Recorder, and addressed himself to the prisoners: You, the prisoners at the bar, you have been here indicted, and proved guilty of high crimes against Emanuel our Prince, and against the welfare of the famous town of Mansoul; crimes for which you must be put to death; and die ye accordingly.

*Their sentence to die.*

*The places of their death assigned.*

So they were sentenced to the death of the cross; the place assigned them for execution, was that where Diabolus drew up his last army against Mansoul; save only, that old Evilquestioning was hanged at the top of Badstreet; just over against his own door.

When the town of Mansoul had thus far rid themselves of their enemies, and of the troublers of their peace; in the next place, a strict commandment was given out, that yet my Lord Willbewill, should, with Diligence his man, search for, and do his best, to apprehend what town Diabolians were yet alive in Mansoul. The names of several of them were, Mr. Fooling, Mr. Letgoodslip, Mr. Slavishfear, Mr. Nolove, Mr. Mistrust, Mr. Fleth, and Mr. Sloth. It was also commanded, that he should apprehend Mr. Evilquestioning's children, that he left behind him, and that they should demolish his house. The children that he left behind him were these, Mr. Doubt, and he was the eldest son; the next to him was Legal Life, Unbelief, Wrong Thoughts of Christ, Clippromise, Carnalsense, Live by Feeling and Selflove. All these he had by one wife, and her name was No hope, she was the kinswoman of old Incredulity, for he was her uncle, and when her father old Dark was dead, he took her and brought her up, and when was marriageable, he gave her to his old Evilquestioning to wife.

Now the Lord Willbewill did put into execution his commission, with great Diligence his man. He took Fooling in the streets, and hanged him up in Wantwit alley, over against his own house. This Fooling was he, that would have had the town of Mansoul deliver up Captain Credence into the hands of Diabolus, provided, that then he would have withdrawn his force out of the town.



town. He also took Mr. Letgoodslip, one day as he was busy in the market, and executed him according to law: now there was an honest poor man in Mansoul, and his name was Mr. Meditation, one of no great account in the days of apostacy, but now of repute with the best of the town. This man therefore they were willing to prefer: now Mr. Letgoodslip had a great deal of wealth, heretofore in Mansoul, and at Emanuel's coming it was sequestered to the use of the Prince: this therefore was given to Mr. Meditation, to improve for the common good, and after him to his son Mr. Thinkful; this Thinkful, he had by Mrs. Piety his wife, and she was the daughter of Mr. Recorder.

After this my Lord apprehended Clippromise; now because he was a notorious villain, for by his doings, much of the King's coin was abused, therefore he was made a public example. He was arraigned and judged to be first set on the pillory, then to be whipt by all the children and servants in Mansoul, and then to be hanged till he was dead. Some may wonder at the severity of this man's punishment, but those that are honest traders in Mansoul, are sensible of the great abuse that one clipper of promises, in little time, may do to the town of Mansoul. And truly my judgment is, that all those of his name and life should be served as he.

*Clippromise taken.*

He also apprehended Carnal sense, and put him in hold; but how it came about I cannot tell, but he brake prison and made his escape; yea, and the bold villain will not yet quit the town, but lurks in the Diabolian Dens at days, and haunts, like a Ghost, honest mens houses at nights. Wherefore there was a proclamation set up in the market place in Mansoul, signifying that whoever could discover Carnal sense, and apprehend him and slay him, should be admitted daily to the Prince's table, and should be made keeper of the treasure of Mansoul. Many therefore did bend themselves to do this thing but take him and slay him they could not, tho' often he was discovered.

*Carnal sense taken.*

But my Lord took Mr. Wrong Thoughts of Christ, and put him in prison, and he died there, though it was long first, for he died of a lingering consumption.

Self-love was also taken and committed to custody but there were many that were allied to him in Mansoul so his judgment was deferred, but at last Mr. Self-denial stood up, and said, if such villains as these may be winked at in Mansoul, I will lay down my commission. He also took him from the croud, and had him among his soldiers, and there he was brained. But some in Mansoul muttered at it, though none durst speak plainly, because Emanuel was in the town. But this brave act of Captain Self-denial came to the Prince's ears, so he sent for him and made him a Lord in Mansoul. My Lord Willbewill also obtained great commendations of Emanuel, for what he had done for the town of Mansoul.

Then my Lord Self-denial took courage, and set to the pursuing of the Diabolians, with my Lord Willbewill; and they took Live-by-feeling, and Legal-life, and put them in hold till they died. But Mr. Unbelief was a nimble Jack, him they could never lay hold of, tho' they attempted to do it often. He therefore, and some few more of the subtlest Diabolian tribe, did yet remain in Mansoul, to the time that Mansoul left off to dwell any longer in the Kingdom of Universe. But they kept them to their dens and holes; if one of them did appear, or happen to be seen in any of the streets in the town of Mansoul, the whole town would be up in arms after them, yea, the very children in Mansoul would cry out after them as after a thief, and would wish that they might stone them to death with stones. And now did Mansoul arrive to some good degree of peace and quiet, her Prince also did abide within her borders; her Captains also, and her soldiers did their duties, and Mansoul minded her trade that she had with the country that was a far off, also she was busy in her Manufacture.

When the town of Mansoul had thus far rid themselves so many of their enemies; and the troublers of their peace the Prince sent to them and appointed a day wherein he would at the market place meet the whole people, and there give them in charge concerning some further matters, that if observed would tend to their further safety and comfort, and to the condemnation and destruction of their home bred Diabolians. So the day appointed was come, and the townsmen met together; Emanuel also came down in his chariot, and all his Captains in their  
state

state attending of him on the right hand, and on the left. Then was an O Yes made for silence, and after some mutual carriages of love the Prince began and thus proceeded.

"You my Mansoul and the beloved of mine heart, many and great are the privileges that I have bestowed upon you: I have singled you, out from others, and have chosen you to myself, not for your worthineis, but for mine own sake. I have also redeemed you, not only from the dread of my father's law, but from the hand of Diabolus. This I have done because I loved you, and because I have set my heart upon you to do you good. I have also, that all things that might hinder thy way to the pleasures of paradise might be taken out of the way, laid down for thy soul, a plenary satisfaction, and have bought thee to myself; a price not of corruptible things as of Silver and gold, but a price of blood, mine own blood, which I have freely spilt upon the ground to make thee mine. So I have reconciled thee, O my Mansoul, to my father, and intrusted thee in mansion-houses that are my father's in the royal city, where things are, O my Mansoul, that Eye hath not seen, nor hath entered into the heart of man to conceive.

Besides, O my Mansoul, thou seest what I have done, and how I have taken thee out of the hands of thine enemies; unto whom thou hadst deeply revolted from my father, and by whom thou wast content to be possessed, and also to be destroyed. I came to thee first by my law, then by my Gospel to awaken thee, and shew thee my Glory. And thou knowest what thou wast, what thou said'st, what thou did'st, and how many times thou rebelled'st against my father and me; yet I left thee not, as thou seest this day, but came to thee, have born thy manners, have waited upon thee, and after all accepted of thee, even of mere grace and favour; and would not suffer thee to be lost as thou most willingly wouldest have been. I also compassed thee about, and afflicted thee on every side that I might make thee weary of thy ways, and bring down thy heart with molestation, to a willingness to close with thy good and happiness. And when I had gotten a compleat conquest over thee I turned it to thy advantage.

Thou seest also what a company of my father's host I have lodged within thy borders, Captains and Rulers, soldiers and men of war, engines and excellent devices to subdue



subdue and bring down thy foes : thou knowest my meaning, O Mansoul, And they are my servants and thine too Mansoul. Yea, my design of possessing of thee with them and the natural tendency of each of them is to defend, purge, strengthen, and sweeten thee for myself, O Mansoul, and to make thee meet for my father's presence, blessing and glory : for thou, my Mansoul, are created to be prepared unto these."

"Thou seest moreover, my Mansoul, how I have passed by thy backslidings, and have healed thee. Indeed I was angry with thee, but I have turned mine anger away from thee, because I loved thee still, and mine anger and mine indignation is ceased in the destruction of thine enemies, O Mansoul. Nor did thy goodness fetch me again unto thee, after that I for thy transgressions have hid my face, and withdrawn my presence from thee. The way of backsliding was thine, but the way and means of thy recovery was mine. I invented the means of thy return ; it was I that made an hedge and a wall, when thou wast beginning to turn to things in which I delighted not. 'Twas I that made thy sweet, bitter ; thy day, night ; thy smooth way, thorny, and that also confounded all that sought destruction. 'Twas I that set Mr. Godlyfear to work in Mansoul. 'Twas I that stirred up thy conscience and understanding, thy will, and thy affections after thy great and woful decay. 'Twas I that put life into thee, O Mansoul, to seek me, that thou mightest find me, and in thy finding find thine own health, happiness and salvation. 'Twas I that fetched the second time the Diabolians out of Mansoul ; and 'twas I that overcame them, and that destroyed them before thy face.

And now, my Mansoul, I am returned to thee in peace, and thy transgressions against me, are as if they had not been. Nor shall it be with thee as in former days, but I will do better for thee than at thy beginning. For yet a little while, O my Mansoul, even after a few more times are gone over thy head, I will (but be not thou troubled at what I say) take down this famous town of Mansoul, Rick and Stone, to the ground. And will carry the stones thereof, and the timber thereof, and the walls thereof, and the dust thereof, and the inhabitants thereof, into mine own country, even into the kingdom of my father : and will there set it up in such strength  
and

and glory, as it never did see in the kingdom where now it is placed. I will even there set it up for my father's habitation; for, that purpose it was first erected in the kingdom of Universe: and there will I make a spectacle of wonder, a monument of mercy, and the admirer of its own mercy. There shall the natives of Mansoul see all that of which they have seen nothing here: there shall they be equal to those unto whom they have been inferior here. And there shalt thou, O my Mansoul, have such communion with me, with my father, and with your Lord Secretary, as is not here possible to be enjoyed. Nor ever could be, shouldst thou live in Universe the space of a thousand years.

And there, O my Mansoul, thou shalt be afraid of murderers no more, of Diabolians, and their threats no more. There, there shall be no more plots, nor contrivances, nor Designs against thee. O my Mansoul. There thou shalt no more hear the evil tidings, or the noise of the Diabolian drum. There thou shalt not see the Diabolian Standard bearers, nor yet behold Diabolus's standard. No Diabolian mount shall be cast up against thee there, nor shall there the Diabolian standard be set up to make thee afraid. There thou shalt need Captains, Ensigns, soldiers, and men of war. There thou shalt meet with no sorrow, nor grief, nor shall it be possible that any Diabolian should again (for ever) be able to creep in to thy skirts, burrow in thy walls, or be seen again within thy borders all the days of Eternity. Life shall there last longer, than here you are able to desire it should, and yet it shall always be sweet and new, nor shall any impediment attend it for ever.

There O Mansoul, thou shalt meet with many of those that have been like thee, and that have been partakers of thy sorrows; even such as I have chosen, and redeemed and set apart as thou for my father's court and city royal. All they will be glad in thee, and thou, when thou seest them, shalt be glad in thine heart.

There are things, O Mansoul, even things of thy father's providing and mine, that never were seen since the beginning of the world, and they are laid up with my father, and sealed up among his treasures for thee, till thou shalt come thither to enjoy them. I told you before that I would remove my Mansoul, and set it up elsewhere,

and

and where I will set it, there are those that love thee, and those that rejoyce in thee now, but how much more, when they shall see thee exalted to honour? My father will then send them for you to fetch you; and their bosoms are chariots to put you in. And you, O my Mansoul, shall ride upon the wings of the wind. They shall come to convey, conduct, and bring you to that, when your eyes see more, that will be your desired haven.

And thus, O my Mansoul, I have shewed unto thee what shall be done to thee hereafter, if thou canst hear, if thou canst understand; and now I will tell thee what at present must be thy duty and practice, until I shall come and fetch thee to myself, according as is related in the scriptures of truth.

First, I charge thee, that thou dost hereafter keep more white and clean the liveries which I gave thee before my last withdrawing from thee. Do it, I say, for this will be thy wisdom. They are in themselves fine linen, but thou must keep them white and clean. This will be your wisdom, your honour, and will be greatly for my glory. When your garments are white, the world will count you mine. Also when your garments are white then I am delighted in your ways; for then your goings to and fro will be like a flash of lightning, that those that are present must take notice of, also their eyes will be made to dazle threat. Deck thyself therefore according to my bidding, and make thyself by my law straight steps for thy feet, so shall thy King greatly desire thy beauty, for he is thy Lord, and worship thou him.

Now that thou mayest keep them as I bid thee, I have, as I did before tell thee, provided for thee an open fountain to wash thy garments in. Look therefore that thou wash often in my fountain, and go not in defiled garments; for as it is to my dishonour, and my disgrace, so it will be to thy discomfort, when you shall walk in filthy garments. Let not therefore my garments, your garments, the garments that I gave thee, be defiled or spotted by the flesh. Keep thy garments always white, and let thy head lack no ointment.

My Mansoul, I have oftimes delivered thee from the designs, plots, attempts, and conspiracies of Diabolus, and for all this I ask thee nothing, but that thou render not to me evil for my good, but that thou bear in mind



my love, and that the continuation of my kindness to my beloved Mansoul, so as to provoke thee to walk, in thy measure, according to the benefit bestowed on thee. Of old the sacrifices were bound with cords to the horns of the golden altar. Consider what is said to thee, O my blessed Mansoul.

"O my Mansoul, I have lived, I have died, I live, and will die no more for thee. I live that thou mayest not Die. Because I live that thou shalt live also. I reconciled thee to my father by the blood of my cross, and being reconciled that thou shalt live through me. I will pray for thee, I will fight for thee, I will do thee good.

"Nothing can hurt thee but sin; nothing can grieve me but sin, nothing can make thee base before thy foes but sin: Take heed of sin, my Mansoul.

"And dost thou know why I at first, and do still suffer Diabolians to dwell in thy walls, O Mansoul? It is to keep thee awaken, to try thy love, to make thee watchful, and to cause thee yet to prize my noble Captains, their soldiers, and my mercy.

"It is also, that yet thou mayest be made to remember what a deplorable condition thou wast once in. I mean when, not some, but all did dwell, not in thy walls, but in thy castle, and in thy strong hold, O Mansoul.

"O my Mansoul, should I slay all them within, many there be without, that would bring me into bondage; for were all those within cut off, those without would find thee sleeping, and then as in a moment they would swallow up my Mansoul. I therefore left them in thee, not to do thee hurt, (the which they yet will, if thou hearken to them, and serve them;) but to do thee good, the which they must, if thou watch and fight against them. Know therefore, that whatever they shall tempt thee to, my design is, that they should drive thee, not further off, but nearer to my father, to learn thee war, to make petitioning desirable to thee, and to make thee little in thine own Eyes. Hearken diligently to this my Mansoul.

"Shew me then thy love, my Mansoul, and let not those that are within thy walls, take thy affections off from him that hath redeemed thy soul. Yea, let the sight of a Diabolian heighten thy love to me. I came once and twice, and thrice to save thee from the poison of those arrows, that would have wrought thy death; stand for

me

me, thy friend, my Mansoul, against the Diabolians, and I will stand for thee before my father, and all his court. Love me against temptations, and I will love thee notwithstanding thine infirmities.

"O my Mansoul, remember what my Captains, my soldiers, and mine engines have done for thee. They have fought for thee, they have suffered by thee, they have born much at thy hands to do thee good, O Mansoul. Hadst thou not had them to help thee, Diabolus had certainly made a hand of thee. Nourish them therefore, my Mansoul. When thou do'st well, they will be well; when thou do'st ill, they will be ill, and sick, and weak. Make not my Captains sick, O Mansoul, for if they be sick, thou can'st not be well; if they be weak, thou canst not be strong; if they be faint, thou canst not be stout and valient for thy King, O Mansoul. Nor must thou think always to live by sense, thou must live upon my word. Thou must believe, O Mansoul, when I am from thee, that yet I love thee, and bear thee upon mine heart for ever.

"Remember therefore, O my Mansoul, that thou art beloved of me; as I have taught thee to watch, to fight, to pray, and to make war upon my foes, so now I command thee to believe, that my love is constant to thee. O my Mansoul, how have I set my heart, my love upon thee? Watch. Behold, I lay none other burden upon thee, than what thou hast already; hold fast till I come."

31 DE 60

F I N I S.

nd  
rt.  
ot-

my  
ey  
ey  
ul.  
er-  
my  
en  
ke  
ck,  
be  
nd  
nk  
d.  
ee,  
for

art  
ht,  
m-  
O  
on  
on  
,"